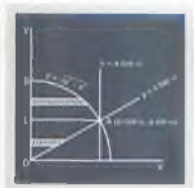


Hari Kishan



# Integral Calculus



Published by

**ATLANTIC®**

PUBLISHERS & DISTRIBUTORS

B-2, Vishal Enclave, Opp. Rajouri Garden,

New Delhi-110027

Phones : 25413460, 25429987, 25466842

Sales Office

7/22, Ansari Road, Darya Ganj,

New Delhi-110002

Phones : 23273880, 23275880, 23280451

Fax : 91-11-23285873

web : [www.atlanticbooks.com](http://www.atlanticbooks.com)

e-mail : [info@atlanticbooks.com](mailto:info@atlanticbooks.com)

Copyright © Atlantic Publishers and Distributors, 2005

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Application for such permission should be addressed to the publisher.

Printed in India

at Nice Printing Press, Delhi

# Contents

---

<i>Preface</i>	v
1. Antiderivatives	1
2. Integration by Substitution Method	9
3. Integration by Parts	21
4. Integration by Trigonometrical Substitutions	29
5. Integration of Hyperbolic Functions	34
6. Integration of Rational Functions	38
7. Integration of Irrational Functions	62
8. Integration by Partial Fractions	79
9. Integration of Transcendental Functions	90
10. Definite Integrals	96
11. Reduction Formulae	119
12. Beta and Gamma Functions	192
13. Determination of Areas (Quadrature)	230
14. Determination of Lengths (Rectification)	287
15. Determination of Volumes and Surfaces of Solids of Revolution	313
16. Integration of Functions of Two and Three Variables	348
17. Change of Order of Integration	365

# 1

## Antiderivatives

---

### 1.1 Integration

Integration is a process which is the inverse of differentiation.

In differential calculus, we find the differential coefficient of a function, while in Integral calculus, we find the function whose differential coefficient is given.

### 1.2 Definitions

If  $\frac{d}{dx} F(x) = f(x)$ , we say that  $F(x)$  is an integral or a primitive or anti-derivative of  $f(x)$ . We write

$$\int f(x) dx = F(x)$$

Thus  $\int \cos x dx = \sin x$

because  $\frac{d}{dx} (\sin x) = \cos x$ .

Similarly  $\int x^2 dx = \frac{x^3}{3}$ ,

$$\int e^x dx = e^x; \text{ etc.}$$

The process of finding the integral of a function is called *integration*. We are said to integrate  $f(x)$  when we find the integral of  $f(x)$ . The function to be integrated is called the *integrand*. Here  $f(x)$  is the integrand.

The symbol " $\int$ " denotes integration;  $dx$  indicates that the integration is to be performed w.r.t.  $x$ ;  $x$  is called the variable of integration. Now if  $C$  is an arbitrary constant, which may assume different values, we also have

$$\frac{d}{dx} \{F(x) + C\} = f(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow \int f(x) dx = F(x) + C$$

It shows that the integral of a function is not unique, because by assigning different values to  $C$ , we will get several integrals of  $f(x)$ . It is for this reason that  $F(x) + C$  is called the General Integral or Indefinite Integral of  $f(x)$ .  $C$  is called the constant of integration.

**Note :** The constant of integration is usually omitted from the result but it is always understood to exist with every indefinite integral.

### 1.3 Standard Integrals

We can find out the integrals of certain important functions keeping in mind that integration is a reverse process of differentiation.

$$(i) \quad \int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}; n \neq -1 \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \right) = x^n$$

$$(ii) \quad \int \frac{1}{x} dx = \log x; \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} \log(x) = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$(iii) \quad \int e^x dx = e^x; \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (e^x) = e^x$$

$$(iv) \quad \int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log_e a}; \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{a^x}{\log_e a} \right) = a^x$$

$$(v) \quad \int \sin x dx = -\cos x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (-\cos x) = \sin x$$

$$(vi) \quad \int \cos x dx = \sin x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (\sin x) = \cos x$$

$$(vii) \quad \int \sec^2 x dx = \tan x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (\tan x) = \sec^2 x$$

$$(viii) \quad \int \operatorname{cosec}^2 x dx = -\cot x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (-\cot x) = \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$$

$$(ix) \quad \int \sec x \tan x dx = \sec x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx} (\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(x)} \quad \int \operatorname{cosec} x \cot x \, dx & \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(-\operatorname{cosec} x) \\ & = -\operatorname{cosec} x \quad \quad \quad = \operatorname{cosec} x \cot x \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{(xi)} \quad \int 1 \, dx = x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$$

$$\text{(xii)} \quad \int 0 \, dx = C \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(C) = 0$$

$$\text{(xiii)} \quad \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \, dx = \sin^{-1} x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(\sin^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

$$\text{(xiv)} \quad \int \frac{1}{1+x^2} \, dx = \tan^{-1} x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(\tan^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$$

$$\text{(xv)} \quad \int \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}} \, dx = \sec^{-1} x \quad \because \frac{d}{dx}(\sec^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}$$

#### 1.4 Fundamental Rules for Integration

**Rule 1.** The integral of the product of a constant and a function is equal to the product of the constant and the integral of the function, i.e.,  $\int cf(x) \, dx = c \int f(x) \, dx$ .

**Rule 2.** The integral of the algebraic sum of two or more functions is equal to the algebraic sum of the integrals of those functions i.e.

$$\int (u \pm v \pm w \pm \dots) \, dx = \int u \, dx \pm \int v \, dx \pm \int w \, dx \pm \dots$$

where  $u, v, w, \dots$  all are functions of  $x$ .

#### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Integrate the following functions w.r.t.  $x$  :

$$\text{(i)} \, x^3 \qquad \text{(ii)} \, x^{\frac{3}{2}} \qquad \text{(iii)} \, \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$$

$$\text{(iv)} \, \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} \qquad \text{(v)} \, \frac{\cos x}{\sin^2 x} \qquad \text{(vi)} \, (1-x^2)^{1/2}.$$

**Solution :**

$$(i) \int x^8 dx = \frac{x^{8+1}}{8+1} = \frac{x^9}{9};$$

$$(ii) \int x^{\frac{3}{2}} dx = \frac{x^{\frac{3}{2}+1}}{\frac{3}{2}+1} = \frac{2}{5} x^{\frac{5}{2}}$$

$$(iii) \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \int x^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx = \frac{x^{-\frac{1}{2}+1}}{-\frac{1}{2}+1} = 2\sqrt{x}$$

$$(iv) \int \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} dx = \int \sec^2 x dx = \tan x$$

$$(v) \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin^2 x} dx = \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} \cdot \frac{1}{\sin x} dx = \int \cot x \operatorname{cosec} x dx = -\operatorname{cosec} x$$

$$(vi) \int (1-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx = \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx = \sin^{-1} x.$$

**Example 2.** Integrate the following functions w.r.t.  $x$  :

$$(i) 0$$

$$(ii) 5$$

$$(iii) 2 - x^a$$

$$(iv) \sin x - \frac{2}{x} + e^x$$

$$(v) \frac{\sin x}{\sin(a-x)}.$$

**Solution :**

$$(i) \int 0 dx = C \quad \text{where } C \text{ is an arbitrary constant.}$$

$$(ii) \int 5 dx = 5 \int dx = 5x$$

$$(iii) \int (2 - x^a) dx = \int 2 dx - \int x^a dx$$

$$= 2 \int dx - \int x^a dx$$

$$= 2x - \frac{x^{a+1}}{a+1}, \text{ where } a \neq -1$$

(If  $a = -1$ , then integral  $= 2x - \log x$ )

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(iv)} \quad \int \left( \sin x - \frac{2}{x} + e^x \right) dx &= \int \sin x \, dx - \int \frac{2}{x} \, dx + \int e^x \, dx \\
 &= -\cos x - 2 \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx + e^x \\
 &= -\cos x - 2 \log x + e^x
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(v)} \quad \int \frac{\sin x}{\sin(a-x)} \, dx &= \frac{1}{\sin(a-x)} \int \sin x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{-\cos x}{\sin(a-x)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Find  $\int \sqrt{1 + \sin 2x} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int \sqrt{1 + \sin 2x} \, dx &= \int \sqrt{\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x + 2 \sin x \cos x} \, dx \\
 &= \int \sqrt{(\cos x + \sin x)^2} \, dx \\
 &= \int (\cos x + \sin x) \, dx \\
 &= \int \cos x \, dx + \int \sin x \, dx \\
 &= \sin x - \cos x.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Find  $\int \frac{x^4}{1+x^2} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int \frac{x^4}{1+x^2} \, dx &= \int \frac{x^4 - 1 + 1}{x^2 + 1} \, dx \\
 &= \int \frac{x^4 - 1}{x^2 + 1} \, dx + \int \frac{dx}{x^2 + 1} \\
 &= \int \frac{(x^2 - 1)(x^2 + 1)}{x^2 + 1} \, dx + \int \frac{dx}{x^2 + 1} \\
 &= \int (x^2 - 1) \, dx + \tan^{-1} x
 \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int x^2 dx - \int dx + \tan^{-1} x \\
 &= \frac{x^3}{3} - x + \tan^{-1} x.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** If  $f'(x) = \cos x + 4$  and  $f(0) = 1$ , then find  $f(x)$ .

**Solution :** By definition of integral

$$\int f'(x) dx = f(x)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore f(x) &= \int (\cos x + 4) dx + C \\
 &= \int \cos x dx + \int 4 dx + C \\
 &= \sin x + 4 \int dx + C \\
 &= \sin x + 4x + C
 \end{aligned}$$

Put  $x = 0$ ,

We get  $f(0) = C$

But  $f(0) = 1$

$\therefore C = 1$

$\therefore f(x) = \sin x + 4x + 1.$

### EXERCISE 1.1

Find the integrals of the following functions with respect to  $x$ .

1.  $6x^3$

2.  $1$

3.  $\cot^2 x$

4.  $\tan^2 x$

5.  $\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$

6.  $ax^2 + bx + c$

7.  $1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \dots$

8.  $\frac{1}{x} + \sin x$

9.  $\frac{5x+7}{x} + e^x$

10.  $\left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)^2$

11.  $\frac{4 - 5 \sin x}{\cos^2 x}$

12.  $\frac{\cos 2x}{\cos^2 x}$

13.  $\frac{1}{1 - \sin x}$
14.  $\frac{\cos x}{\sin^2 x}$
15.  $\frac{\sin^2 x - \cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x \cos^2 x}$
16.  $(\tan x + \cot x)^2$
17.  $\frac{x^3 + 3x^2 + 4}{x^{\frac{1}{2}}}$
18.  $\frac{\cos 2x + 2 \sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x}$
19.  $\sin x \sec^2 x$
20.  $\frac{1}{1 + \sin x}$
21.  $\frac{\cos 2x - \cos 2\alpha}{\cos x - \cos \alpha}$
22.  $\frac{\cos x - \sin x}{\cos x + \sin x} (1 + \sin 2x)$
23.  $\frac{\sin x + \cos x}{\sqrt{1 + \sin 2x}}$
24.  $\frac{\sin x + \operatorname{cosec} x}{\tan x}$
25.  $10^x + 3e^x + x^3$
26.  $\frac{(x+a)^3}{\sqrt{x}}$
27.  $\frac{6}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} + 3 \sec^2 x$
28.  $\frac{(x^2+8)^2}{x^4}$
29.  $(2x^3 + 3x - 7)x^{-\frac{2}{3}}$
30.  $\frac{2}{1+x^2} + 3a^x$
31. If  $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x^2 + x - 1$  and  $y = 0$  when  $x = 0$ , then find out a relation in  $y$  and  $x$ .
32. If  $\frac{dy}{dx} = 1 - 5x^2$  and  $y = 3$  when  $x = 1$ , then express  $y$  in terms of  $x$ .

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 1.1

1.  $x^6$
2.  $x$
3.  $-\cot x - x$
4.  $\tan x - x$
5.  $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} - 2x^{\frac{1}{2}}$
6.  $\frac{ax^3}{3} + \frac{bx^2}{2} + cx$

7.  $x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots$
9.  $5 + 7 \log x + e^x$
11.  $4 \tan x - 5 \sec x$
13.  $\tan x + \sec x$
15.  $\tan x + \cot x$
17.  $\frac{2}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}} + \frac{6}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + 8\sqrt{x}$
19.  $\sec x$
21.  $2(\sin x + x \cos x)$
23.  $x$
25.  $\frac{10^x}{\log_e 10} + 3e^x + \frac{1}{4}x^4$
26.  $\frac{2}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}} + \frac{6}{5}ax^{\frac{5}{2}} + 2a^2x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2a^3x^{\frac{1}{2}}$
27.  $6 \sin^{-1} x + 3 \tan x$
29.  $\frac{3}{5}x^{\frac{10}{3}} + \frac{9}{4}x^{\frac{4}{3}} - 21x^{\frac{1}{3}}$
31.  $y = \frac{2}{3}x^3 + \frac{x^2}{2} - x$
8.  $\log x - \cos x$
10.  $\frac{x^3}{3} - 2x - \frac{1}{x}$
12.  $2x - \tan x$
14.  $-\operatorname{cosec} x$
16.  $\tan x - \cot x$
18.  $\tan x$
20.  $\tan x - \sec x$
22.  $\sin x \cos x$
24.  $\sin x - \operatorname{cosec} x$
28.  $x - \frac{16}{x} - \frac{64}{3}x^{-3}$
30.  $2 \tan^{-1} x + \frac{3a^x}{\log_e a}$
32.  $y = x - \frac{5}{3}x^3 + \frac{11}{9}$

## 2

### Integration by Substitution Method

---

**2.1** Suppose we are required to integrate  $f(x)$  w.r.t.  $x$ . Sometimes its direct integral is not easy or possible. In such a case we regard  $x$  as a suitable function of  $t$  say  $x = \phi(t)$  so that  $dx = \phi'(t) dt$ . Now,

$$\int f(x) dx = \int f\{\phi(t)\} \phi'(t) dt$$

Now we evaluate this integral and putting the value of  $t$  in terms of  $x$  from  $x = \phi(t)$ , we express the result in term of  $x$ .

**Note :** There is no hard and fast rule for making suitable substitutions. It depends upon the nature of the integral. Experience will enable the students to think out a suitable institution. However, for the sake of convenience, we can learn certain suitable substitutions under the following headings :

**(i) Function of a linear function of  $x$  :**

For evaluating an integral of the type

$\int f(ax + b) dx$ , we put  $ax + b = t$  so that  $a dx = dt$

$$\therefore dx = \frac{dt}{a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \int f(ax + b) dx &= \int f(t) \frac{dt}{a} \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \int f(t) dt\end{aligned}$$

which can be easily evaluated.

**(ii) Functions involving  $a^2 \pm x^2$ .**

In such cases the proper substitution is  $x = at$ .

**(iii) Functions of  $x^n$  :**

If we have an integral of the type

$\int f(x^n) x^{n-1} dx$ , then the proper substitution is  $x^n = t$ .

**(iv) Powers of a function :**

Any power of a function when multiplied by the differential coefficient of the function can be immediately integrated by substituting  $t$  for the function.

(v) The integral of a function in which the numerator is the differential coefficient of the denominator is equal to the logarithm of the denominator, i.e.,

$$\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} dx = \log f(x)$$

**Note :** Sometimes two or more substitutions in succession are used.

**2.2 Remember the following results :**

$$(i) \quad \int \sin(ax + b) dx = -\frac{\cos(ax + b)}{a}$$

$$(ii) \quad \int \cos(ax + b) dx = \frac{\sin(ax + b)}{a}$$

$$(iii) \quad \int \sec^2(ax + b) dx = \frac{\tan(ax + b)}{a}$$

$$(iv) \quad \int e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}$$

$$(v) \quad \int \frac{1}{ax + b} dx = \frac{1}{a} \log(ax + b)$$

$$(vi) \quad \int (ax + b)^n dx = \frac{(ax + b)^{n+1}}{(n+1)a}, n \neq -1$$

$$(vii) \quad \int \sec(ax + b) \tan(ax + b) dx = \frac{\sec(ax + b)}{a}$$

$$(viii) \quad \int \frac{1}{a^2 + x^2} dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$(ix) \quad \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$(x) \quad \int \frac{1}{x \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} dx = \frac{1}{a} \sec^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$(xi) \quad \int \tan x \, dx = \log \sec x = -\log \cos x$$

$$(xii) \quad \int \cot x \, dx = \log \sin x.$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{1-x^4}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let} \quad I = \int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{1-x^4}} dx$$

$$\text{Then} \quad I = \int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{1-(x^4)^2}} dx$$

$$\text{Put} \quad x^4 = t$$

$$\therefore 4x^3 dx = dt$$

$$\therefore x^3 dx = \frac{dt}{4}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \sin^{-1} t \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \sin^{-1} (x^4). \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{a}{b+ce^x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let} \quad I = \int \frac{a}{b+ce^x} dx$$

$$\text{Then} \quad I = \int \frac{ae^{-x}}{be^{-x}+c} dx$$

Dividing the numerator and denominator of the integrand by  $e^x$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Now put } be^{-x} + c = t \\ \therefore -be^{-x} dx = dt \\ \therefore e^{-x} dx = -\frac{dt}{b} \end{array} \right.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= -\frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dt}{t} \\ &= -\frac{a}{b} \log t \\ &= -\frac{a}{b} \log (be^{-x} + c) \\ &= -\frac{a}{b} \log \left( \frac{b}{e^x} + c \right) \\ &= -\frac{a}{b} \log \left( \frac{b + ce^x}{e^x} \right) \\ &= \frac{a}{b} \log \left( \frac{e^x}{b + ce^x} \right). \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{2x^3}{4+x^4} dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $I = \int \frac{2x^3}{4+x^4} dx$

Then  $I = 2 \int \frac{x^3}{4+(x^4)^2} dx$

Put  $x^4 = t$

$$\therefore 4x^3 dx = dt$$

$$\therefore x^3 dx = \frac{dt}{4}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \frac{2}{4} \int \frac{dt}{4+t^2} = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dt}{t^2+2^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{2} \right) = \frac{1}{4} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{2} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x^4}{2} \right). \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}\sqrt{1-x}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $I = \int \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}\sqrt{1-x}} dt$

Then  $I = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}\sqrt{1-x}}$

Put  $\sqrt{x} = t$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} x^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2 dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2 dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \\ &= \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} \\ &= \sin^{-1} t = \sin^{-1} (\sqrt{x}) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{1}{1+3\sin^2 x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $I = \int \frac{1}{1+3\sin^2 x} dx$

Divide Numerator & Denominator by  $\cos^2 x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\sec^2 x + 3 \tan^2 x} dx \\ &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x}{1 + \tan^2 x + 3 \tan^2 x} dx \\ &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x dx}{1 + 4 \tan^2 x} dx \end{aligned}$$



$$= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{\sec^2 x \, dx}{\frac{1}{4} + \tan^2 x}$$

Put  $\tan x = t$

$$\therefore \sec^2 x \, dx = dt$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dt}{\frac{1}{4} + t^2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dt}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + t^2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{\frac{1}{2}} \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} (2t)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} (2 \tan x).$$

**Example 6.** Evaluate  $\int \sqrt{1 + \sin x} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \sqrt{1 + \sin x} \, dx$$

$$= \int \sqrt{\sin^2 \frac{x}{2} + \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + 2 \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2}} \, dx$$

$$= \int \sqrt{\left( \sin \frac{x}{2} + \cos \frac{x}{2} \right)^2} \, dx$$

$$= \int \left( \sin \frac{x}{2} + \cos \frac{x}{2} \right) dx$$

$$= \frac{-\cos \frac{x}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{\sin \frac{x}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -2 \cos \frac{x}{2} + 2 \sin \frac{x}{2} \\
 &= 2 \left( \sin \frac{x}{2} - \cos \frac{x}{2} \right).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\sin x \cos x \, dx}{a \cos^2 x + b \sin^2 x}$ .

**Solution :**

Let 
$$I = \int \frac{\sin x \cos x \, dx}{a \cos^2 x + b \sin^2 x}$$

Put  $a \cos^2 x + b \sin^2 x = t$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (-2a \cos x \sin x \\
 + 2b \sin x \cos x) \, dx = dt
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 2(b-a) \sin x \cos x \, dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sin x \cos x \, dx = \frac{dt}{2(b-a)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{2(b-a)} \int \frac{dt}{t} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2(b-a)} \log t \\
 &= \frac{1}{2(b-a)} \log (a \cos^2 x + b \sin^2 x).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{1}{\sin x + \cos x} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{1}{\sin x + \cos x} \, dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{1}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sin x + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cos x} \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{1}{\sin \frac{\pi}{4} \sin x + \cos \frac{\pi}{4} \cos x} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dx}{\cos \left( x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \sec \left( x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) dx \quad \text{Put } x - \frac{\pi}{4} = t \\
 &\quad \quad \quad \therefore dx = dt
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \sec t \, dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{\sec t (\sec t + \tan t)}{\sec t + \tan t} dt
 \end{aligned}$$

Again, put  $\sec t + \tan t = z$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (\sec t \tan t + \sec^2 t) \, dt &= \frac{1}{z} \\
 \therefore \sec t (\tan t + \sec t) \, dt &= dz
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dz}{z} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log z \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log (\sec t + \tan t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log \left[ \sec \left( x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) + \tan \left( x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right].
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 9.** Evaluate  $\frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{1+x} dx$$

$$= \int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{x}(1+x)}$$

$$\text{Put } \sqrt{x} = t$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} x^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= 2 \int \frac{t^2 dt}{1+t^2} \\ &= 2 \int \frac{t^2 + 1 - 1}{1+t^2} dt \\ &= 2 \int \left( 1 - \frac{1}{1+t^2} \right) dt \\ &= 2 \left[ t - \tan^{-1} t \right] \\ &= 2 \left[ \sqrt{x} - \tan^{-1} (\sqrt{x}) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

**Example 10.** Evaluate  $\int \sin 2x \cos 3x dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \frac{1}{2} \int 2 \sin 2x \cos 3x dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int (\sin 5x - \sin x) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ -\frac{\cos 5x}{5} + \cos x \right] \\ &= \frac{5 \cos x - \cos 5x}{10}. \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 2.1

Integrate the following functions with respect to the variable of integration  $x$  :

1.  $\frac{2x+3}{x^2+3x+7}$

2.  $\frac{1-\sin x}{x+\cos x}$

3.  $\frac{\cos x - \sin x}{\sin x + \cos x}$

4.  $\frac{\sin x}{4+5 \cos x}$

5.  $\frac{x^{n-1}}{1+x^n}$
6.  $\frac{x^3}{1+x^4}$
7.  $\frac{\tan x}{\log \sec x}$
8.  $\frac{\cot x}{\log \sin x}$
9.  $\frac{\sec x \operatorname{cosec} x}{\log \tan x}$
10.  $\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^2 x}{1+\cot x}$
11.  $\frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$
12.  $\frac{e^{2x} + 1}{e^{2x} - 1}$
13.  $\frac{x^{n-1}}{a+bx^n}$
14.  $\frac{\sin x}{a+b \cos x}$
15.  $\frac{3x+2}{3x^2+4x+7}$
16.  $\frac{x+1}{x^2+2x+2}$
17.  $\frac{1}{x \log x}$
18.  $\frac{1}{x(1+\log x)}$
19.  $\frac{e^x}{3+e^x}$
20.  $\frac{x^{e-1} + e^{x-1}}{x^e + e^x}$
21.  $\frac{1}{(1+x^2) \tan^{-1} x}$
22.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2} \sin^{-1} x}$
23.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}(1+\sqrt{x})}$
24.  $\frac{1}{x \log x [\log (\log x)]}$
25.  $\operatorname{cosec} x$
26.  $\frac{2x-1}{(x+1)^3}$
27.  $\frac{x^2}{(a+bx)^2}$
28.  $\frac{x}{1+x^4}$
29.  $\frac{\cos \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}$
30.  $x^2 \sin x^3$
31.  $\cos \left( 3x + \frac{\pi}{4} \right)$
32.  $\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{1-x}}$

33.  $e^x \cos e^x$

34.  $x^{a-1} \sin x^a$

35.  $\tan^4 x$

36.  $\sec^4 x$

37.  $\frac{x^3}{(1-x^4)^2}$

38.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sin(x-a)}$

39.  $\sin x \sin 2x \sin 3x$

40.  $\operatorname{cosec}(x-a) \operatorname{cosec}(x-b)$ .

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 2.1

1.  $\log(x^2 + 3x + 7)$

2.  $\log(x + \cos x)$

3.  $\log(\sin x + \cos x)$

4.  $-\frac{1}{5} \log(4 + 5 \cos x)$

5.  $\frac{1}{n} \log(1 + x^n)$

6.  $\frac{1}{4} \log(1 + x^4)$

7.  $\log[\log(\sec x)]$

8.  $\log[\log(\sin x)]$

9.  $\log[\log(\tan x)]$

10.  $-\log(1 + \cot x)$

11.  $\log(e^x + e^{-x})$

12.  $\log(e^x - e^{-x})$

13.  $\frac{1}{b^n} \log(a + bx^n)$

14.  $-\frac{1}{b} \log(a + b \cos x)$

15.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(3x^2 + 4x + 7)$

16.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(x^2 + 2x + 2)$

17.  $\log \log x$

18.  $\log(1 + \log x)$

19.  $\log(3 + e^x)$

20.  $\frac{1}{e} \log(x^e + e^x)$

21.  $\log \tan^{-1} x$

22.  $\log \sin^{-1} x$

23.  $2 \log(1 + \sqrt{x})$

24.  $\log[\log\{\log(x)\}]$

25.  $\log(\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x)$  or  $\log \tan \frac{x}{2}$

26.  $-\frac{2}{x+1} + \frac{3}{2} \frac{1}{(x+1)^2}$

27.  $\frac{1}{b^3} [(a + bx) - 2a \log(a + bx) - a^3 (a + bx)^{-1}]$

28.  $\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} x^2$

29.  $\sin \sqrt{x}$

30.  $-\frac{1}{3} \cos x^3$

31.  $\frac{\sin \left( 3x + \frac{\pi}{4} \right)}{3}$

32.  $2(1-x)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{2}{5}(1-x)^{\frac{5}{2}} + \frac{4}{3}(1-x)^{\frac{3}{2}}$

33.  $\sin e^x$

34.  $-\frac{1}{n} \cos x^n$

35.  $-\frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x - \tan x + x$

36.  $\tan x + \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x$

37.  $\frac{1}{4(1-x^4)}$

38.  $x \cos \alpha + \sin \alpha \log \sin (x - \alpha)$

39.  $-\frac{1}{2} \left( \cos x + \frac{1}{2} \cos 5x \right)$

40.  $\frac{1}{\sin (a-b)} \log \frac{\sin (x-a)}{\sin (x-b)}.$

# 3

## Integration by Parts

---

### 3.1 Formula of Integration by Parts

If  $u$  and  $v$  are two functions of  $x$ , then

$$\int u v \, dx = u \int v \, dx - \int \frac{du}{dx} \left( \int v \, dx \right) dx$$

i.e. integral of the product of two functions = first function  $\times$  integral of second function – integral of [differential coefficient of first function  $\times$  integral of second function].

Integration with the help of this rule is called integration by parts. The success of the method depends upon choosing the first function in such a way that the second term on the right hand side may be easy to evaluate. There is no general rule for choosing first and second functions. However, the following points should be kept in mind while solving the questions by this method :

- (i) Of the two functions, the one whose integral is not known should be taken as the first function.
- (ii) If the integrals of both the functions are known, then the function which vanishes by successive differentiation be treated as the first function.
- (iii) If the integral is a single function, then 1 should be treated as the second function.
- (iv) If the integral of neither of the two functions reduces to zero by differentiating successively, then any of the given function can be treated as the first function. But if the integral on the right hand side reverts to the original form, then the value of the integral can be immediately inferred by transposing the former to the left hand side.



$$3.2 \quad \int e^x \{f(x) + f'(x)\} dx = e^x \cdot f(x)$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\log(\log x)}{x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{\log(\log x)}{x} dx$$

$$I = \int_1^1 \frac{\log t}{t} dt$$

Put  $\log x = t$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{x} dx = dt$$

(integrating by parts)

$$= (\log t)t - \int_1^1 t dt$$

$$= t \log t - t$$

$$= \log x \log(\log x) - \log x$$

$$= \log x \{\log(\log x) - 1\}$$

$$= \log x [\log(\log x) - \log e]$$

$$= \log x \log\left(\frac{\log x}{e}\right).$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \tan^{-1} x dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_1^1 \frac{\tan^{-1} x}{1} dx$$

$$= \tan^{-1} x \cdot x - \int \frac{1}{1+x^2} \cdot x dx \quad (\text{integrating by parts})$$

$$= x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x}{1+x^2} dx$$

$$= x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{d(1+x^2)}{1+x^2}$$

$$= x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \log(1+x^2).$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \sin^{-1} x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \sin^{-1} x \, dx \\
 &= \sin^{-1} x \cdot x - \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \cdot x \, dx \\
 &= x \sin^{-1} x - \int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \, dx \quad (\text{integrating by parts}) \\
 &\quad \text{Put } 1-x^2 = t^2 \\
 &\quad \therefore -2x \, dx = 2t \, dt \\
 &\quad \therefore x \, dx = -t \, dt \\
 &= x \sin^{-1} x + \int \frac{t \, dt}{t} \\
 &= x \sin^{-1} x + t \\
 &= x \sin^{-1} x + \sqrt{1-x^2}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{xe^x}{(1+x^2)} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{xe^x}{(1+x^2)} \, dx \\
 &= \int \underset{\text{I}}{xe^x} \cdot \underset{\text{II}}{\frac{1}{(1+x^2)}} \, dx \quad (\text{integrating by parts}) \\
 &= xe^x \left( -\frac{1}{1+x} \right) - \int (xe^x + e^x) \left( -\frac{1}{1+x} \right) dx \\
 &= \frac{-xe^x}{1+x} + e^x = e^x \left( 1 - \frac{x}{1+x} \right) = \frac{e^x}{1+x}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \underset{\text{I}}{e^{ax}} \sin \underset{\text{II}}{bx} \, dx$$

Integrating by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= e^{ax} \left( -\frac{\cos bx}{b} \right) - \int a e^{ax} \left( -\frac{\cos bx}{b} \right) dx \\
 &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{a}{b} \int e^{ax} \cos bx \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{a}{b} \left[ \frac{e^{ax} \sin bx}{b} - \int e^{ax} a \frac{\sin bx}{b} dx \right] \\
 &\quad \text{(again integrating by parts)} \\
 &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{a}{b^2} e^{ax} \sin bx - \frac{a^2}{b^2} \int e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{a}{b^2} e^{ax} \sin bx - \frac{a^2}{b^2} I \\
 \therefore I \left( 1 + \frac{a^2}{b^2} \right) &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{a}{b^2} e^{ax} \sin bx \\
 \therefore I \left( \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b^2} \right) &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{b} + \frac{ae^{ax} \sin bx}{b^2} \\
 \therefore I &= -\frac{e^{ax} \cos bx}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{ae^{ax} \sin bx}{a^2 + b^2} \\
 \therefore I &= \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \sin bx - b \cos bx).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 6.** Evaluate  $\int e^x (1 + \tan x) \sec x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int e^x (1 + \tan x) \sec x \, dx \\
 &= \int \frac{e^x \sec x}{1} \, dx + \int e^x \sec x \tan x \, dx \\
 &= e^x \sec x - \int e^x \sec x \tan x \, dx + \int e^x \sec x \tan x \, dx \\
 &= e^x \sec x.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x + \sin x}{1 + \cos x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{x + \sin x}{1 + \cos x} dx \\
 &= \int \frac{x + 2 \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2}}{2 \cos^2 \frac{x}{2}} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int x \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx + \int \tan \frac{x}{2} dx \\
 &\quad \quad \quad \text{I} \quad \quad \text{II} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ x \cdot 2 \tan \frac{x}{2} - \int 1 \cdot 2 \tan \frac{x}{2} dx \right] + \int \tan \frac{x}{2} dx \\
 &= x \tan \frac{x}{2} - \int \tan \frac{x}{2} dx + \int \tan \frac{x}{2} dx \\
 &= x \tan \frac{x}{2}.
 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 3.1

Integrate the following functions :

- |                                                  |                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. $xe^x$                                        | 2. $x \sin x$                                   |
| 3. $x \cos x$                                    | 4. $x \sec^2 x$                                 |
| 5. $x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$                  | 6. $x \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2} \cos x$ |
| 7. $x \sin^2 x$                                  | 8. $x \cos^2 x$                                 |
| 9. $x \sin^3 x$                                  | 10. $x \cos^3 x$                                |
| 11. $x \tan^2 x$                                 | 12. $x \cot^2 x$                                |
| 13. $x \tan x \sec^2 x$                          | 14. $x \cot x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$         |
| 15. $x \sin x \cos 2x \sin 3x$                   | 16. $x \cos x \cos 2x \cos 3x$                  |
| 17. $\log x$                                     | 18. $\log (1 + x^2)$                            |
| 19. $\log \left\{ x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} \right\}$ | 20. $\log x/(1 + x)^2$                          |
| 21. $(\log x)^2$                                 | 22. $x^a \log x$                                |

23.  $x \log x$

25.  $\frac{\log(1+x^2)}{x^2}$

27.  $x \tan^{-1} x$

29.  $x^3 \tan^{-1} x$

31.  $e^{ax} \cos bx$

33.  $e^x \frac{1+x}{(2+x)^2}$

35.  $e^x \frac{1+\sin x}{1+\cos x}$

37.  $\frac{(1-x)e^x}{x^2}$

39.  $\frac{\log x}{(1+\log x)^2}$

24.  $\frac{\log x}{x^2}$

26.  $x^x (\log x)^2$

28.  $x^2 \tan^{-1} x$

30.  $x \cot^{-1} x$

32.  $e^x (\sin x + \cos x)$

34.  $e^x \frac{x^2+1}{(x+1)^2}$

36.  $e^x \frac{1-\sin x}{1-\cos x}$

38.  $\frac{e^x (1+x \log x)}{x}$

40.  $\frac{x-\sin x}{1-\cos x}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 3.1

1.  $e^x (x-1)$

2.  $-x \cos x + \sin x$

3.  $x \sin x + \cos x$

4.  $x \tan x + \log \cos x$

5.  $-x \cot x + \log \sin x$

6.  $\frac{1}{16} (\sin 2x - 2x \cos 2x)$

7.  $\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{x \sin 2x}{4} - \frac{\cos 2x}{8}$

8.  $\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x \sin 2x}{4} + \frac{\cos 2x}{8}$

9.  $\frac{1}{4} \left[ -3x \cos x + 3 \sin x + \frac{x \cos 3x}{3} - \frac{\sin 3x}{9} \right]$

10.  $\frac{1}{4} \left[ 3x \sin x + 3 \cos x + \frac{x \sin 3x}{3} + \frac{\cos 3x}{9} \right]$

11.  $x \tan x + \log \cos x - \frac{x^2}{2}$

12.  $-x \cot x + \log \sin x - \frac{x^2}{2}$

$$13. \frac{1}{2}(x \tan^2 x - \tan x + x)$$

$$14. -\frac{1}{2}(x \cot^2 x + \cot x + x)$$

$$15. \frac{1}{4} \left[ -x \left( \frac{\cos 2x}{2} + \frac{\cos 4x}{4} - \frac{\cos 6x}{6} \right) + \left( \frac{\sin 2x}{4} + \frac{\sin 4x}{16} - \frac{\sin 6x}{36} \right) \right]$$

$$16. \frac{1}{8} \left[ x^2 + x \left( \sin 2x + \frac{\sin 4x}{2} + \frac{\sin 6x}{3} \right) + \left( \frac{\cos 2x}{2} + \frac{\cos 4x}{8} + \frac{\cos 6x}{18} \right) \right]$$

$$17. x \log x - x$$

$$18. x \log(1 + x^2) - 2x + 2 \tan^{-1} x$$

$$19. x \log(x + \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}) - \sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$$

$$20. -\frac{\log x}{1+x} + \log \frac{x}{1+x}$$

$$21. x(\log x)^2 - 2x \log x + 2x$$

$$22. \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \left[ \log x - \frac{1}{n+1} \right]$$

$$23. \frac{x^2}{2} \left( \log x - \frac{1}{2} \right)$$

$$24. -\frac{1}{x}(\log x + 1)$$

$$25. -\frac{1}{x} \log(1 + x^2) + 2 \tan^{-1} x$$

$$26. \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \left[ (\log x)^2 - \frac{2}{n+1} \log x + \frac{2}{(n+1)^2} \right]$$

$$27. \frac{1}{2} [(x^2 + 1) \tan^{-1} x - x]$$

$$28. \frac{x^3}{3} \tan^{-1} x - \frac{x^2}{6} + \frac{1}{6} \log(x^2 + 1)$$

$$29. \frac{x^4}{4} \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{x^3}{3} - x + \tan^{-1} x \right)$$

$$30. \frac{1}{2} \left[ x + (x^2 + 1) \cot^{-1} x \right]$$

$$31. \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} (a \cos bx + b \sin bx)$$

$$32. e^x \sin x$$

$$33. \frac{e^x}{2 + x}$$

$$34. \frac{x-1}{x+1} e^x$$

$$35. e^x \tan \frac{x}{2}$$

$$36. -e^x \cot \frac{x}{2}$$

$$37. -\frac{1}{x} e^x$$

$$38. e^x \log x$$

$$39. \frac{x}{1 + \log x}$$

$$40. -x \cot \frac{x}{2}$$

# 4

## Integration by Trigonometrical Substitutions

---

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2 \tan^{-1} x^3}{1+x^6} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{x^2 \tan^{-1} x^3}{1+x^6} dx$$

Put  $x^3 = t$

$$\therefore 3x^2 dx = dt$$

$$\therefore x^2 dx = \frac{dt}{3}$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{3} \int \frac{\tan^{-1} t}{1+t^2} dt$$

Put  $t = \tan \theta$

$$\therefore dt = \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{3} \int \frac{\tan^{-1} (\tan \theta) \sec^2 \theta}{1 + \tan^2 \theta} d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \int \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{\theta^2}{6}$$

$$= \frac{(\tan^{-1} t)^2}{6}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x \tan^{-1} x}{(1+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

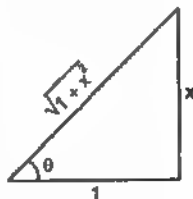
$$I = \int \frac{x \tan^{-1} x}{(1+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} dx$$

Put  $x = \tan \theta$

$$\therefore dx = \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{\tan \theta \tan^{-1}(\tan \theta) \sec^2 \theta d\theta}{(1 + \tan^2 \theta)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \\
 &= \int \frac{\tan \theta \cdot \theta}{\sec \theta} d\theta \\
 &= \int \frac{\theta \sin \theta d\theta}{1} \quad (\text{integrate by parts}) \\
 &= \theta(-\cos \theta) - \int 1 \cdot (-\cos \theta) d\theta \\
 &= -\theta \cos \theta + \sin \theta \\
 &= -\tan^{-1} x \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} + \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \\
 &= \frac{x - \tan^{-1} x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

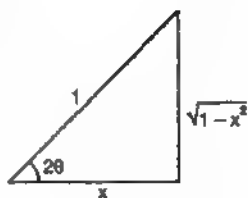


**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}} dx \quad \text{Put } x = \cos 2\theta \\
 \therefore dx &= -2 \sin 2\theta d\theta \\
 \therefore I &= \int \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{1-\cos 2\theta}{1+\cos 2\theta}} (-2 \sin 2\theta) d\theta \\
 &= \int \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{2 \sin^2 \theta}{2 \cos^2 \theta}} (-2 \sin 2\theta) d\theta \\
 &= -2 \int \theta \sin 2\theta d\theta \\
 &= -2 \left[ \theta \left( \frac{-\cos 2\theta}{2} \right) - \int 1 \cdot \left( \frac{-\cos 2\theta}{2} \right) d\theta \right] \\
 &= -2 \left[ \frac{-\theta \cos 2\theta}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\left[-\theta \cos 2\theta + \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2}\right] \\
 &= \theta \cos 2\theta - \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cos^{-1} x \cdot x - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{1-x^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ x \cos^{-1} x - \sqrt{1-x^2} \right].
 \end{aligned}$$



**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{e^{m \sin^{-1} x}}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{e^{m \sin^{-1} x}}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx$$

Put  $x = \sin \theta$

$$\therefore dx = \cos \theta d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{e^{m\theta}}{\cos \theta} \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int e^{m\theta} d\theta \\
 &= \frac{e^{m\theta}}{m} \\
 &= \frac{e^{m \sin^{-1} x}}{m}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\sec(\tan^{-1} x)}{1+x^2} dx$ .

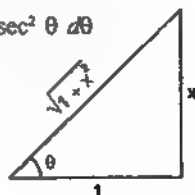
**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{\sec(\tan^{-1} x)}{1+x^2} dx$$

Put  $x = \tan \theta$

$$\therefore dx = \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \frac{\sec(\tan^{-1} \tan \theta)}{1 + \tan^2 \theta} \sec^2 \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int \sec \theta d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$



$$= \log (\sec \theta + \tan \theta)$$

$$= \left( \log \sqrt{1+x^2} + x \right).$$

### EXERCISE 4.1

Integrate the following functions with respect to  $x$  :

$$1. \frac{x \sin^{-1} x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

$$2. \frac{x^2 \tan^{-1} x}{1+x^2}$$

$$3. \tan^{-1} \frac{2x}{1-x^2}$$

$$4. \sin^{-1} \frac{2x}{1+x^2}$$

$$5. \frac{\sin^{-1} x}{(1-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

$$6. \sin^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{x}{a+x}}$$

$$7. \cos^{-1} \left( \frac{1-x^2}{1+x^2} \right)$$

$$8. \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{3x-x^2}{1-3x^2} \right)$$

$$9. \frac{x \tan^{-1} x}{(1+x^2)^2}$$

$$10. \frac{1}{(a^2 - b^2 x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

$$11. \frac{1}{(a^2 + b^2 x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$

$$12. \frac{1}{x^3 \sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 4.1

$$1. x - \sqrt{1-x^2} \sin^{-1} x$$

$$2. x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \log (1+x^2) - \frac{1}{2} (\tan^{-1} x)^2$$

$$3. 2x \tan^{-1} x - 2 \log (\sqrt{1+x^2})$$

$$4. 2 \left[ x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \log (1+x^2) \right]$$

$$5. \frac{x \sin^{-1} x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} + \frac{\log (1-x^2)}{2}$$

$$6. (a+x) \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} - \sqrt{ax}$$

$$7. 2x \tan^{-1} x - \log(1+x^2)$$

$$8. 3 \left[ x \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \log(1+x^2) \right]$$

$$9. \frac{1}{2} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \cdot \tan^{-1} x \cdot \left( \frac{2}{1+x^2} - 1 \right) + \frac{x}{1+x^2} \right]$$

$$10. \frac{x}{a^2 \sqrt{a^2 - b^2 x^2}}$$

$$11. \frac{-x}{b^2 \sqrt{a^2 x^2 - b^2}}$$

$$12. \frac{1}{2} \sec^{-1} x + \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}{2x^2}$$

# 5

## Integration of Hyperbolic Functions

---

**5.1** There are six hyperbolic functions defined as under :

$$(i) \sinh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}$$

$$(ii) \cosh x = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}$$

$$(iii) \tanh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}$$

$$(iv) \coth x = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}}$$

$$(v) \operatorname{sech} x = \frac{2}{e^x + e^{-x}}$$

$$(vi) \operatorname{cosech} x = \frac{2}{e^x - e^{-x}}$$

**5.2**

$$\sinh 0 = 0$$

$$\cosh 0 = 1$$

$$\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x = 1$$

$$\operatorname{sech}^2 x = 1 - \tanh^2 x$$

$$\operatorname{cosech}^2 x = -1 + \coth^2 x$$

$$\sinh 2x = 2 \sinh x \cosh x$$

$$\cosh 2x = \cosh^2 x + \sinh^2 x$$

$$= 1 + 2 \sinh^2 x$$

$$= 2 \cosh^2 x - 1.$$

$$\tanh 2x = \frac{2 \tanh x}{1 + \tanh^2 x}$$

$$5.3 \quad \sinh^{-1} x = \log \left( x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \right)$$

$$\cosh^{-1} x = \log \left( x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1} \right)$$

$$\tanh^{-1} x = \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1+x}{1-x}$$

$$5.4 \quad \int \sinh x \, dx = \cosh x$$

$$\int \cosh x \, dx = \sinh x$$

$$\int \operatorname{sech}^2 x \, dx = \tanh x$$

$$\int \operatorname{cosech}^2 x \, dx = -\coth x$$

$$\int \operatorname{sech} x \tanh x \, dx = -\operatorname{sech} x$$

$$\int \operatorname{cosech} x \coth x \, dx = -\operatorname{cosech} x$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sinh x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{1}{\sinh x} \, dx \\ &= \int \frac{2}{e^x - e^{-x}} \, dx \\ &= 2 \int \frac{1}{e^x - e^{-x}} \, dx \\ &= 2 \int \frac{e^x}{1 - e^{-2x}} \, dx \end{aligned}$$

[Dividing  $N^*$  &  $D^*$  by  $e^x$ .

Put  $e^{-x} = t$

$\therefore -e^{-x} dx = dt$

$\therefore e^{-x} dx = -dt$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= -2 \int \frac{dt}{1-t^2} \\
 &= -2 \int \frac{1}{(1-t)(1+t)} dt \\
 &= - \int \left( \frac{1}{1-t} + \frac{1}{1+t} \right) dt \\
 &= - [-\log(1-t) + \log(1+t)] \\
 &= \log(1-t) - \log(1+t) \\
 &= \log \frac{1-t}{1+t} \\
 &= \log \frac{1-e^{-x}}{1+e^{-x}} \\
 &= \log \frac{1-\frac{1}{e^x}}{1+\frac{1}{e^x}} \\
 &= \log \left( \frac{e^x-1}{e^x+1} \right).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \sinh 3x \cosh 3x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \sinh 3x \cosh 3x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \sinh 6x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\cosh 6x}{6} \\
 &= \frac{\cosh 6x}{12}.
 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 5.1

Integrate the following functions :

1.  $\cosh^2 x$
2.  $\frac{1}{(e^x + e^{-x})^2}$

3.  $\left(\frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}}\right)^2$

4.  $(e^x - e^{-x})^2$

5.  $\cosh(\log x)$

6.  $\sin x \sinh x$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 5.1**

1.  $\frac{1}{2}\left(x + \frac{\sinh 2x}{2}\right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{4} \tanh x$

3.  $x - \coth x$

4.  $\sinh 2x - 2x$

5.  $\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \log x\right)$

6.  $\frac{1}{2}(\sin x \cosh x - \cos x \sinh x)$



# 6

## Integration of Rational Functions

---

6.1 To evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2}$ ,  $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2}$  and  $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i)} \quad I &= \int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2}, (x > a) \\ &= \int \frac{dx}{(x-a)(x+a)} \end{aligned}$$

First we shall break the integrand into partial fractions.

$$\text{Let } \frac{1}{x^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{(x-a)(x+a)} = \frac{A}{x-a} + \frac{B}{x+a}$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 = A(x+a) + B(x-a)$$

Put  $x = a$ , we get

$$1 = A(a+a) = A \cdot 2a$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \frac{1}{2a}$$

Then, put  $x = -a$ , we get

$$1 = B(-a-a) = B(-2a)$$

$$\Rightarrow B = -\frac{1}{2a}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{x^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \left( \frac{1}{x-a} - \frac{1}{x+a} \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int \frac{1}{x^2 - a^2} dx &= \frac{1}{2a} \int \left( \frac{1}{x-a} - \frac{1}{x+a} \right) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2a} [\log(x-a) - \log(x+a)] \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2a} \log \left( \frac{x-a}{x+a} \right)$$

$$(ii) \quad I = \int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2}, (x < a)$$

First we shall break the integrand into partial fractions.

$$\text{Let } \frac{1}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{(a-x)(a+x)} = \frac{A}{a-x} + \frac{B}{a+x}$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 = A(a+x) + B(a-x)$$

Put  $x = a, -a$ , we get

$$A = \frac{1}{2a}, B = \frac{1}{2a}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \left[ \frac{1}{a-x} + \frac{1}{a+x} \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} &= \frac{1}{2a} \int \left( \frac{1}{a-x} + \frac{1}{a+x} \right) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2a} [-\log(a-x) + \log(a+x)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2a} \log \left( \frac{a+x}{a-x} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$(iii) \quad I = \int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2}$$

Put  $x = a \tan \theta$

so that  $dx = a \sec^2 \theta d\theta$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int \frac{a \sec^2 \theta d\theta}{a^2 + a^2 \tan^2 \theta} \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \int d\theta \\ &= \frac{\theta}{a} \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \end{aligned}$$

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - 64}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - 64} &= \int \frac{dx}{x^2 - (8)^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2 \cdot 8} \log \left( \frac{x-8}{x+8} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{16} \log \left( \frac{x-8}{x+8} \right)\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{9 - 4x^2}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{dx}{9 - 4x^2} &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dx}{\frac{9}{4} - x^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dx}{\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - x^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2 \cdot \frac{3}{2}} \log \left( \frac{\frac{3}{2} + x}{\frac{3}{2} - x} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{12} \log \left( \frac{3 + 2x}{3 - 2x} \right)\end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{(2x+1)\sqrt{4x+3}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{dx}{(2x+1)\sqrt{4x+3}}$$

Put  $4x + 3 = t^2$

$$\therefore 4dx = 2t \, dt$$

$$\therefore 2dx = t \, dt$$

$$\therefore dx = \frac{1}{2} t \, dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{t \, dt}{\left(2 \cdot \frac{t^2 - 3}{4} + 1\right)t} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dt}{\frac{t^2 - 1}{2}} \\
 &= \int \frac{dt}{t^2 - 1} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{t-1}{t+1} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \log \left[ \frac{\sqrt{4x+3}-1}{\sqrt{4x+3}+1} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{7+4x^2}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int \frac{dx}{7+4x^2} &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dx}{\frac{7}{4} + x^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dx}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}\right)^2 + x^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{7}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{2x}{\sqrt{7}} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 6.1

**Integrate :**

1.  $\frac{1}{9x^2 - 4}$

2.  $\frac{1}{9 - 4x^2}$

3.  $\frac{x^2}{x^2 - a^2}$

4.  $\frac{x^2}{4 + x^2}$

5.  $\frac{2x-3}{x^2+4}$

6.  $\frac{1}{a^4 + x^4}$

7.  $\frac{x}{x^4 - a^4}$

8.  $\frac{\sec^2 x}{\tan^2 x + 4}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 6.1

1.  $\frac{1}{12} \log \frac{3x-2}{3x+2}$

2.  $\frac{1}{12} \log \frac{3+2x}{3-2x}$

3.  $x + \frac{a}{2} \log \frac{x-a}{x+a}$

4.  $x - 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{2}$

5.  $\log(x^2 + 4) - \frac{3}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{2}$

6.  $\frac{1}{2a^2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right)$

7.  $\frac{1}{4a^2} \log \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x^2 + a^2}$

8.  $\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\tan x}{2} \right)$

**6.2** To evaluate the integrals of the form  $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + bx + c}$  where  $ax^2 + bx + c$  is such a quadratic expression which cannot be factorized.

**Method.** First we transform  $ax^2 + bx + c$  in either of the possible forms  $X^2 + A^2$ ,  $X^2 - A^2$  and  $A^2 - X^2$ , where  $X$  is one degree expression of  $x$  and  $A$  is a constant. Then we use the corresponding formula and evaluate the integral.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{2x^2 + x - 1}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{dx}{2x^2 + x - 1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{x^2 + \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{x^2 + \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{16} - \frac{1}{16} - \frac{1}{2}} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\left(x + \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 - \frac{9}{16}} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\left(x + \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^2} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2 \cdot \frac{3}{4}} \log \left( \frac{x + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{3}{4}}{x + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{3} \log \left( \frac{x - \frac{1}{2}}{x + 1} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{3} \log \left\{ \frac{2x - 1}{2(x + 1)} \right\}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - x + 1}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \frac{dx}{x^2 - x + 1} \\
&= \int \frac{dx}{x^2 - x + \frac{1}{4} + 1 - \frac{1}{4}} \\
&= \int \frac{dx}{\left(x - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x - \frac{1}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{3}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.2**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{x^2 + x + 1}$

2.  $\frac{1}{3 - 2x - x^2}$

3.  $\frac{1}{2x^2 + 4x + 3}$

4.  $\frac{x}{x^4 + 2x^2 + 5}$

5.  $\frac{1}{2x^2 + x + 1}$

6.  $\frac{1}{x^2 + 6x + 8}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.2**

1.  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}} \right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{4} \log \left( \frac{3+x}{1-x} \right)$

3.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left[ \sqrt{2} (x+1) \right]$

4.  $\frac{1}{4} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x^2+1}{2} \right)$

5.  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{7}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{4x+1}{\sqrt{7}} \right)$

6.  $\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{x+2}{x+4}$

**6.3** To evaluate the integrals of the type  $\int \frac{px+q}{ax^2+bx+c} dx$

**Method.** We break  $px+q$  into two parts in one of which is there is the differential coefficient of the denominator i.e.  $ax^2+bx+c$  and the other is a constant. Let,

$$px+q = M \frac{d}{dx} (ax^2+bx+c) + N,$$

where  $M$  and  $N$  are constants.

$$\Rightarrow px + q = M(2ax + b) + N$$

Comparing the coefficients of equal powers of  $x$ ,  $M$  and  $N$  can be determined.

Now the given integral breaks up into two integrals, one of which is of the form  $\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} dx$  which on evaluation gives  $\log f(x)$  and other is of the form  $\int \frac{1}{x^2 \pm a^2} dx$  or  $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2}$  which can be evaluated by results given in article 6.1.

Hence the given integral can be completely evaluated.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{3x+1}{2x^2-2x+3} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\frac{d}{dx}(2x^2 - 2x + 3) = 4x - 2$$

$$\text{Let } 3x + 1 = M(4x - 2) + N$$

where  $M$  and  $N$  are constants.

Comparing the coefficients of equal powers of  $x$ , we get

$$3 = 4M \quad \Rightarrow \quad M = \frac{3}{4}$$

$$1 = -2M + N$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 = -2 \cdot \frac{3}{4} + N$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 = -\frac{3}{2} + N$$

$$\Rightarrow N = 1 + \frac{3}{2} = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$\therefore \int \frac{3x+1}{2x^2-2x+3} dx$$

$$= \int \frac{\frac{3}{4}(4x-2) + \frac{5}{2}}{2x^2-2x+3} dx$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{3}{4} \int \frac{4x-2}{2x^2-2x+3} dx + \frac{5}{2} \int \frac{dx}{2x^2-2x+3} \\
&= \frac{3}{4} \log(2x^2-2x+3) + \frac{5}{4} \int \frac{dx}{x^2-x+\frac{3}{2}} \\
&= \frac{3}{4} \log(2x^2-2x+3) + \frac{5}{4} \int \frac{dx}{x^2-x+\frac{1}{4}+\frac{3}{2}-\frac{1}{4}} \\
&= \frac{3}{4} \log(2x^2-2x+3) + \frac{5}{4} \int \frac{dx}{\left(x-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^2} \\
&= \frac{3}{4} \log(2x^2-2x+3) + \frac{5}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x-\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}} \right) \\
&= \frac{3}{4} \log(2x^2-2x+3) + \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{5}}
\end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.3**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{3x+1}{2x^2+x+1}$

2.  $\frac{x+1}{x^2+4x+5}$

3.  $\frac{x}{2x^2+2x+3}$

4.  $\frac{\cos x}{\sin^2 x + 4 \sin x + 5}$

5.  $\frac{4x+3}{2x^2+2x+5}$

6.  $\frac{5x-2}{1+2x+3x^2}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.3**

1.  $\frac{3}{4} \log(x^2+2x+1) + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{7}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{4x+1}{\sqrt{7}} \right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(x^2+4x+5) - \tan^{-1}(x+2)$

$$3. \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2 + 2x + 3) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x+1}{\sqrt{2}} \right)$$

$$4. \tan^{-1}(\sin x + 2)$$

$$5. \log(2x^2 + 2x + 5) + \frac{1}{3} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{2x+1}{3} \right)$$

$$6. \frac{5}{6} \log(3x^2 + 2x + 1) - \frac{11}{3\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{3x+1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

#### 6.4 To evaluate the integrals of the type

$$(i) \int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos^2 x} \quad (ii) \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin^2 x}$$

$$(iii) \int \frac{dx}{a \sin^2 x + b \cos^2 x}$$

$$(iv) \int \frac{dx}{a \sin^2 x + b \sin x \cos x + c \cos^2 x}$$

**Method.** We divide the numerator and denominator of the integrand by  $\cos^2 x$  and then put  $\tan x = t$ .

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{1 + 3 \sin^2 x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{dx}{1 + 3 \sin^2 x} \\ &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\sec^2 x + 3 \tan^2 x} dx \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Dividing the numerator} \\ \text{and denominator of the} \\ \text{integrand by } \cos^2 x. \end{array} \right. \\ &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x dx}{1 + 4 \tan^2 x} \end{aligned}$$

Now put  $\tan x = t$

$$\therefore \sec^2 x dx = dt$$

$$\therefore I = \int \frac{dt}{1 + 4t^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dt}{\frac{1}{4} + t^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{dt}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + t^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} (2t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} (2 \tan x).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x + 4 \cos^2 x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 x + 4 \cos^2 x} \\
 &= \int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\tan^2 x + 4} dx \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Dividing the numerator} \\ \text{and denominator of} \\ \text{integrand by } \cos^2 x. \end{array} \right.
 \end{aligned}$$

Put  $\tan x = t$

$\therefore \sec^2 x \, dx = dt$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{dt}{t^2 + 4} \\
 &= \int \frac{dt}{t^2 + 2^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{2} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\tan x}{2} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.4**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{1 + \cos^2 x}$

2.  $\frac{1}{a^2 - b^2 \cos^2 x}, a > b$

3.  $\frac{1}{(2 \sin x + \cos x)^2}$

4.  $\frac{1}{(a \sin x + b \cos x)^2}$

5.  $\frac{1}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x}$

6.  $\frac{\cos x}{\cos 3x}$

7.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sin 3x}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.4**

1.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\tan x}{\sqrt{2}} \right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{a \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{a \tan x}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right)$

3.  $\frac{1}{2(2 \tan x + 1)}$

4.  $\frac{-1}{a(\tan x + b)}$

5.  $\frac{1}{ab} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{b \tan x}{a} \right)$

6.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{3} + \tan x}{\sqrt{3} - \tan x} \right)$

7.  $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}} \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{3} + \tan x}{\sqrt{3} - \tan x} \right)$

6.5 To evaluate integrals of the type  $\int \frac{1}{a + b \cos x} dx$  and

$$\int \frac{1}{a + b \sin x} dx$$

(i)  $I = \frac{1}{a + b \cos x} dx$

$$= \int \frac{dx}{a \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + b \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} - \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int \frac{dx}{(a+b)\cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + (a-b)\sin^2 \frac{x}{2}} \\
 &= \int \frac{dx}{A\cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + B\sin^2 \frac{x}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $a + b = A$

and  $a - b = B$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx}{A + B \tan^2 \frac{x}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{B} \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx}{\frac{A}{B} + \tan^2 \frac{x}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Put  $\tan \frac{x}{2} = t$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = 2dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{2}{B} \int \frac{dt}{\frac{A}{B} + t^2} \\
 &= \frac{2}{B} \int \frac{dt}{\left(\sqrt{\frac{A}{B}}\right)^2 + t^2} \\
 &= \frac{2}{B} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{A}{B}}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{\sqrt{\frac{A}{B}}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{AB}} \tan^{-1} \left( t \sqrt{\frac{B}{A}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{AB}} \tan^{-1} \left( \sqrt{\frac{B}{A}} \cdot \tan \frac{x}{2} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}} \tan \frac{x}{2} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(ii)} \quad I &= \int \frac{1}{a + b \sin x} dx \\
 &= \int \frac{dx}{a \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + 2b \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2}} \\
 &= \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx}{a \left( 1 + \tan^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + 2b \tan \frac{x}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put} \quad \tan \frac{x}{2} = t$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = 2dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{2dt}{a(1+t^2) + 2bt} \\
 &= \frac{2}{a} \int \frac{dt}{1+t^2 + \frac{2b}{a}t} \\
 &= \frac{2}{a} \int \frac{dt}{1+t^2 + \frac{2b}{a}t + \frac{b^2}{a^2} - \frac{b^2}{a^2}} \\
 &= \frac{2}{a} \int \frac{dt}{1 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} + \left(t + \frac{b}{a}\right)^2} \\
 &= \frac{2}{a} \int \frac{dt}{\left(\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a}\right)^2 + \left(t + \frac{b}{a}\right)^2} \\
 &= \frac{2}{a} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t + \frac{b}{a}}{\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a}} \right) \quad \text{if } a > b
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{at + b}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right) \text{ if } a > b \\
 &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{5 + 4 \cos x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{dx}{5 + 4 \cos x} \\
 &= \int \frac{dx}{5 \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + 4 \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} - \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right)} \\
 &= \int \frac{dx}{9 \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2}} \\
 &= \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx}{9 + \tan^2 \frac{x}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Put  $\tan \frac{x}{2} = t$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = 2dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \frac{2dt}{9 + t^2} \\
 &= 2 \int \frac{dt}{3^2 + t^2} \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{3} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{2}{3} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\tan \frac{x}{2}}{3} \right)$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{5 + 4 \sin x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{dx}{5 + 4 \sin x} \\ &= \int \frac{dx}{5 \left( \cos^2 \frac{x}{2} + \sin^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + 8 \sin \frac{x}{2} \cos \frac{x}{2}} \\ &= \int \frac{\sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx}{5 \left( 1 + \tan^2 \frac{x}{2} \right) + 8 \tan \frac{x}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put } \tan \frac{x}{2} = t$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx = 2dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= 2 \int \frac{dt}{5(1+t^2) + 8t} \\ &= \frac{2}{5} \int \frac{dt}{t^2 + \frac{8}{5}t + 1} \\ &= \frac{2}{5} \int \frac{dt}{t^2 + \frac{8}{5}t + \frac{16}{25} + 1 - \frac{16}{25}} \\ &= \frac{2}{5} \int \frac{dt}{\left(t + \frac{4}{5}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^2} \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{2}{5} \cdot \frac{1}{\frac{3}{5}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t + \frac{4}{5}}{\frac{3}{5}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{5t + 4}{3} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{5 \tan \frac{x}{2} + 4}{3} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.5**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{4 + 5 \sin x}$

2.  $\frac{1}{2 + \sin 2x}$

3.  $\frac{1}{4 + 5 \cos x}$

4.  $\frac{1}{2 + \cos x}$

5.  $\frac{1}{1 + 2 \cos x}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.5**

1.  $\frac{1}{3} \log \left( \frac{2 \tan \frac{x}{2} + 1}{2 \tan \frac{x}{2} + 4} \right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1 + 2 \tan x}{\sqrt{3}} \right)$

3.  $\frac{1}{3} \log \left( \frac{3 + \tan \frac{x}{2}}{3 - \tan \frac{x}{2}} \right)$

4.  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \tan \frac{x}{2} \right)$

5.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{3} + \tan \frac{x}{2}}{\sqrt{3} - \tan \frac{x}{2}} \right)$

**6.6 To evaluate the integrals of the type  $\int \frac{x^2 + 1}{x^4 + kx^2 + 1} dx$ , where  $k$  is a constant.**

**Method.** Divide Numerator & Denominator of the integrand by  $x^2$  and then put  $x + \frac{1}{x} = t$  or  $x - \frac{1}{x} = t$ .

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2 + 1}{x^4 + 1} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{x^2 + 1}{x^4 + 1} dx \\ &= \int \frac{1 + \frac{1}{x^2}}{x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}} dx \\ &= \int \frac{1 + \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left(x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} - 2\right) + 2} dx \\ &= \int \frac{1 + \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left(x - \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 + 2} dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put } x - \frac{1}{x} = t$$

$$\therefore \left(1 + \frac{1}{x^2}\right) dx = dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{So, } I &= \int \frac{dt}{t^2 + 2} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x - \frac{1}{x}}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x^2 - 1}{x\sqrt{2}} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{x^4 + 1}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{dx}{x^4 + 1} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{(x^2 + 1) - (x^2 - 1)}{x^4 + 1} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{x^2 + 1}{x^4 + 1} dx - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^4 + 1} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} (I_1 - I_2)
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $I_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{\sqrt{2}x}$  (by Example 1)

and  $I_2 = \int \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^4 + 1} dx$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int \frac{1 - \frac{1}{x^2}}{x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2}} dx \\
 &= \int \frac{1 - \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left(x^2 + \frac{1}{x^2} + 2\right) - 2} dx \\
 &= \int \frac{1 - \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 - 2} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put } x + \frac{1}{x} = t$$

$$\therefore \left(1 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right) dx = dt$$

$$\therefore I_2 = \int \frac{dt}{t^2 - 2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{t - \sqrt{2}}{t + \sqrt{2}} \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{x + \frac{1}{x} - \sqrt{2}}{x + \frac{1}{x} + \sqrt{2}} \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{x^2 - \sqrt{2}x + 1}{x^2 + \sqrt{2}x + 1} \right)$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{\sqrt{2}x} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{x^2 - \sqrt{2}x + 1}{x^2 + \sqrt{2}x + 1} \right) \right]$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sqrt{\tan \theta} \, d\theta$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/4} \sqrt{\tan \theta} \, d\theta$$

$$\text{Put } \tan \theta = t^2$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \theta \, d\theta = 2t \, dt$$

$$\therefore d\theta = \frac{2t \, dt}{\sec^2 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{2t \, dt}{1 + \tan^2 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{2t \, dt}{1+t^4}$$

When  $\theta = 0$ ,  $t = 0$

When  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ ,  $t = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int_0^1 \frac{t \cdot 2t \, dt}{1+t^4} \\ &= 2 \int_0^1 \frac{t^2 \, dt}{1+t^4} \\ &= 2 \int_0^1 \frac{dt}{t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}} \\ &= \frac{2}{2} \int_0^1 \frac{\left(1 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{1}{t^2}\right)}{t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{1 + \frac{1}{t^2}}{\left(t - \frac{1}{t}\right)^2 + 2} dt + \int_0^1 \frac{1 - \frac{1}{t^2}}{\left(t + \frac{1}{t}\right)^2 - 2} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{d\left(t - \frac{1}{t}\right)}{\left(t - \frac{1}{t}\right)^2 + 2} + \int_0^1 \frac{d\left(t + \frac{1}{t}\right)}{\left(t + \frac{1}{t}\right)^2 - 2} \\ &= \left[ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{t - \frac{1}{t}}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \right]_0^1 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \left[ \log \left( \frac{t + \frac{1}{t}\sqrt{2}}{t + \frac{1}{t} + \sqrt{2}} \right) \right]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \tan^{-1}(0) - \tan^{-1}(-\infty) \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \left[ \log \left( \frac{t^2 - \sqrt{2}t + 1}{t^2 + \sqrt{2}t + 1} \right) \right]_0^1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \left[ \log \left( \frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{2+\sqrt{2}} \right) - \log 1 \right] \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{\sqrt{2}+1} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.6**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{x^2-1}{x^4+1}$

2.  $\frac{x^2+1}{x^4-x^2+1}$

3.  $\frac{x^2}{x^4+1}$

4.  $\frac{x^2}{x^4+x^2+1}$

5.  $\frac{1}{x^4+x^2+1}$

6.  $\frac{x}{x^4+x^2+1}$

7.  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sqrt{\cot \theta} d\theta$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.6**

1.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log \left( \frac{x^2-x\sqrt{2}+1}{x^2+x\sqrt{2}+1} \right)$

2.  $\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x^2-1}{x} \right)$

3.  $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2-1}{x\sqrt{2}} - \frac{4}{\sqrt{2}} \log \frac{x^2-x\sqrt{2}+1}{x^2+x\sqrt{2}+1}$

4.  $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2-1}{x\sqrt{3}} + \log \frac{x^2-x+1}{x^2+x+1}$

5.  $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2-1}{x\sqrt{3}} - \frac{1}{4} \log \frac{x^2-x+1}{x^2+x+1}$

$$6. \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x^2 + 1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$7. \frac{\pi}{2\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \log \frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{\sqrt{2}+1}$$

### 6.7 Problems based on a special method.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\cos x \, dx}{a \cos x + b \sin x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let } \cos x = A (a \cos x + b \sin x) + B \frac{d}{dx} (a \cos x + b \sin x)$$

$$\therefore \cos x = A (a \cos x + b \sin x) + B (-a \sin x + b \cos x)$$

$$\Rightarrow \cos x = (Aa + Bb) \cos x + (Ab - Ba) \sin x$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $\sin x$  and  $\cos x$  on both sides, we get

$$1 = Aa + Bb, \quad 0 = Ab - Ba$$

Solving these we get

$$A = \frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}, \quad B = \frac{b}{a^2 + b^2}$$

Now,

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \frac{\cos x \, dx}{a \cos x + b \sin x} \\ &= \int \frac{A(a \cos x + b \sin x) + (-a \sin x + b \cos x)}{a \cos x + b \sin x} \, dx \\ &= A \int dx + B \int \frac{-a \sin x + b \cos x}{a \cos x + b \sin x} \, dx \\ &= Ax + B \log (a \cos x + b \sin x) \\ &= \frac{ax}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{b \log (a \cos x + b \sin x)}{a^2 + b^2} \\ &= \frac{ax + b \log (a \cos x + b \sin x)}{a^2 + b^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 6.7**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{3} \sin x + \cos x}$

2.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sin x - \cos x}$

3.  $\frac{1}{4 + 3 \tan x}$

4.  $\frac{1}{a + b \tan x}$

5.  $\frac{2 \sin x + 3 \cos x}{3 \sin x + 4 \cos x}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 6.7**

1.  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}x - \frac{1}{4} \log(\sqrt{3} \sin x + \cos x)$

2.  $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \log(\sin x - \cos x)$

3.  $\frac{4x}{25} + \frac{3}{25} \log(4 \cos x + 3 \sin x)$

4.  $\frac{ax}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{b}{a^2 + b^2} \log(a \cos x + b \sin x)$

5.  $\frac{18}{25} + \frac{1}{25} (3 \sin x + 4 \cos x)$



## Integration of Irrational Functions

---

7.1 To evaluate the integrals of the type  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}$ ,  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}$ ,  
 $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}$

$$(i) \quad I = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} \quad \text{Put } x = a \tan \theta$$

$$\therefore dx = a \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int \frac{a \sec^2 \theta d\theta}{\sqrt{a^2 \tan^2 \theta + a^2}} \\ &= \int \sec \theta d\theta \\ &= \log (\sec \theta + \tan \theta) \\ &= \log \left\{ \sqrt{1 + \tan^2 \theta} + \tan \theta \right\} \\ &= \log \left\{ \sqrt{1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}} + \frac{x}{a} \right\} \\ &= \log \left\{ x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} \right\} - \log a \\ &= \log \left\{ x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} \right\} \text{ leaving } -\log a, \text{ it being a constant.} \end{aligned}$$

$$(ii) \quad I = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} \quad \text{Put } x = a \sec \theta$$

$$\therefore dx = a \sec \theta \tan \theta d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int \frac{a \sec \theta \tan \theta}{\sqrt{a^2 \sec^2 \theta - a^2}} d\theta \\ &= \int \sec \theta d\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \log (\sec \theta + \tan \theta) \\
 &= \log (\sec \theta + \sqrt{\sec^2 \theta - 1}) \\
 &= \log \left( \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{\frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1} \right) \\
 &= \log (x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}) - \log a \\
 &= \log (x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}) ; \text{leaving } -\log a, \text{ it being a constant.}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(iii)} \quad I &= \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} & \text{Put } x &= a \sin \theta \\
 & & \therefore dx &= a \cos \theta \, d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{a \cos \theta \, d\theta}{\sqrt{a^2 - a^2 \sin^2 \theta}} \\
 &= \int d\theta = \theta = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a}
 \end{aligned}$$

### SUITABLE SUBSTITUTIONS

7.2	Form of Expression	Suitable Substitution
1.	$a^2 - x^2$	$x = a \sin \theta$
2.	$x^2 - a^2$	$x = a \sec \theta$
3.	$\frac{a^2 - x^2}{a^2 + x^2}$	$x^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$
4.	$\frac{a - x}{a + x}$	$x = a \cos 2\theta$
5.	$\sqrt{2ax - x^2}$	$x = a(1 - \cos \theta)$

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{9 + 4x^2}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{9 + 4x^2}} = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\frac{9}{4} + x^2}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \log \left\{ x + \sqrt{x^2 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \log \left\{ x + \sqrt{x^2 + \frac{9}{4}} \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x \, dx}{\sqrt{4-x^4}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{x \, dx}{\sqrt{4-x^4}} & \text{Put } x^2 &= t \\
 & & \therefore 2x \, dx &= dt \\
 & & \therefore x \, dx &= \frac{dt}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{4-t^2}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{2^2-t^2}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{t}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x^2}{2} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \sqrt{\frac{a+x}{a-x}} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \sqrt{\frac{a+x}{a-x}} \, dx & \text{Put } x &= a \cos \theta \\
 & & \therefore dx &= -a \sin \theta \, d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \int \sqrt{\frac{a+a \cos \theta}{a-a \cos \theta}} (-a \sin \theta) \, d\theta \\
 &= -a \int \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos \theta}{1-\cos \theta}} \sin \theta \, d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -a \int \sqrt{\frac{2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}} \cdot 2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} d\theta \\
&= -2a \int \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} d\theta \\
&= -a \int (1 + \cos \theta) d\theta \\
&= -a (\theta + \sin \theta) \\
&= -a \left[ \cos^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) + \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{a} \right] \quad \left| \because \frac{x}{a} = \cos \theta \right. \\
&= - \left[ a \cos^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \right] \quad \left| \because \sin \theta \right. \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \theta} \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad = \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad = \sqrt{\frac{a^2 - x^2}{a^2}}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - e^{2x}}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - e^{2x}}}$$

$$= \int \frac{e^{-x} dx}{\sqrt{e^{-2x} - 1}}$$

Put  $e^{-x} = t$

$\therefore -e^{-x} dx = dt$

$$\therefore I = - \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t^2 - 1}}$$

$$= -\log [t + \sqrt{t^2 - 1}]$$

$$= -\log [e^{-x} + \sqrt{e^{-2x} - 1}]$$

**EXERCISE 7.1**

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{4-9x^2}}$

2.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{4x^2-1}}$

3.  $\frac{3x^2}{\sqrt{9-16x^6}}$

4.  $\frac{x+1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$

5.  $\frac{\sqrt{1-x}}{\sqrt{1+x}}$

6.  $\frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}-\cos^2 x}}$

7.  $\frac{\sec^2 x}{\sqrt{\tan^2 x+4}}$

8.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{4+\cos^2 x}}$

9.  $\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{4\cos^2 x-1}}$

10.  $\frac{e^x}{\sqrt{4+e^{2x}}}$

11.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-e^x}}$

12.  $\frac{2e^x}{\sqrt{4-e^{2x}}}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 7.1**

1.  $\frac{1}{3} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{3x}{2} \right)$

2.  $\frac{1}{2} \log \left[ x + \sqrt{x^2 - \frac{1}{4}} \right]$

3.  $\frac{1}{4} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{4x^3}{3} \right)$

4.  $\sqrt{x^2-1} + \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+1}]$

5.  $\sin^{-1} x + \sqrt{1-x^2}$

6.  $\log \left( \sin x + \sqrt{\sin^2 x - \frac{3}{4}} \right)$

7.  $\log (\tan x + \sqrt{\tan^2 x + 4})$

$$8. -\log [\cos x + \sqrt{4 + \cos^2 x}]$$

$$9. -\frac{1}{2} \log [2 \cos x + \sqrt{4 \cos^2 x - 1}]$$

$$10. \log [e^x + \sqrt{4 + e^{2x}}]$$

$$11. 2 \log [e^{-x/2} + \sqrt{e^{-x} - 1}]$$

$$12. 2 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{e^x}{2} \right)$$

**7.2 To evaluate the integrals of the form**  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c}}$ .

**Method.** We express  $\sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c}$  in the form  $\sqrt{X^2 + A^2}$  or  $\sqrt{X^2 - A^2}$  or  $\sqrt{A^2 - X^2}$  where  $X$  is a linear function of  $x$  and  $A$  is a constant. Then using corresponding formulae derived in article 7.1, we evaluate the given integral.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - 4x - 2x^2}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - 4x - 2x^2}} \\ &= \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2} \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} - 2x - x^2}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} - (x^2 + 2x)}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{2} - (x^2 + 2x + 1)}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\left(\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}\right)^2 - (x+1)^2}} \end{aligned}$$

Put  $x + 1 = t$   
 $\therefore dx = dt$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2 - t^2}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \sin^{-1} \left\{ (x+1) \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

**7.3 To evaluate the integrals of the form**  $\int \frac{px+q}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}} dx$ .

**Method.** We write,

$$px + q = M \frac{d}{dx} (ax^2 + bx + c) + N$$

where  $M$  and  $N$  are constants. Then equating the coefficients of the equal powers of  $x$  on both sides we find  $M$  and  $N$ . Now the given integral breaks up into two parts :

First integral  $= \int \frac{f'(x)}{\sqrt{f(x)}} dx = 2\sqrt{f(x)}$  and second integral

assumes the form  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm A^2}}$  or  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{A^2 - x^2}}$  which can be evaluated using results derived in article 7.1.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x+8}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Here, } x + 8 = M \frac{d}{dx} (x^2 + 2x + 5) + N$$

where  $M$  and  $N$  are constants.

$$\therefore x + 8 = M(2x + 2) + N$$

Equating the coefficients of equal powers of  $x$  on both sides, we get

$$1 = 2M$$

$$\text{and} \quad 8 = 2M + N$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad M = \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } N = 8 - 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = 8 - 1 = 7$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad I &= \int \frac{x+8}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} dx \\ &= \int \frac{\frac{1}{2}(2x+2)+7}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x+2}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} dx + 7 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} \\ &= I_1 + I_2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now,} \quad I_1 = \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x+2}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{Put } x^2+2x+5 = t \\ \therefore (2x+2) dx = dt \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad I_1 &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} t^{1/2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \sqrt{t} \\ &= \sqrt{x^2+2x+5} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and} \quad I_2 &= 7 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}} \\ &= 7 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x+1)^2+2^2}} \\ &= 7 \log \left\{ (x+1) + \sqrt{(x+1)^2+2^2} \right\} \\ &= 7 \log \left\{ (x+1) + \sqrt{x^2+2x+5} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad I &= \sqrt{x^2+2x+5} \\ &\quad + 7 \left[ \log \left\{ (x+1) + \sqrt{x^2+2x+5} \right\} \right] \end{aligned}$$



## EXERCISE 7.2

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 5}}$

2.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 2x}}$

3.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 2x + 5}}$

4.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2x^2 - x + 2}}$

5.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 + 8x - 5x^2}}$

6.  $\frac{x+1}{\sqrt{2x^2 + x - 3}}$

7.  $\frac{2x+5}{\sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 5}}$

8.  $\frac{3x+1}{\sqrt{5 - 2x - x^2}}$

9.  $\frac{2x}{\sqrt{x^2 - x - 1}}$

10.  $\frac{4x+5}{\sqrt{x^2 + 4x + 9}}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 7.2

1.  $\log [x - 2 + \sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 5}]$

2.  $\log [x + 1 + \sqrt{x^2 + 2x}]$

3.  $\log [x - 1 + \sqrt{x^2 - 2x + 5}]$

4.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log \left[ x - \frac{1}{4} + \sqrt{\left(x - \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{15}}{4}\right)^2} \right]$

5.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{5x - 4}{6} \right)$

6.  $\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{2x^2 + x - 3} + \frac{3}{4\sqrt{2}} \log [4x + 1 + \sqrt{2x^2 + x - 3}]$

7.  $2\sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 5} + 3 \log \{x + 1 + \sqrt{x^2 + 2x + 5}\}$

8.  $-3\sqrt{5 - 2x - x^2} - 2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x - 1}{6}$

$$9. \quad 2\sqrt{x^2 - x - 1} + \log \left[ x - \frac{1}{2} + \sqrt{x^2 - x - 1} \right]$$

$$10. \quad 4\sqrt{x^2 + 4x + 9} - 3 \log [(x+2) + \sqrt{x^2 + 4x + 9}]$$

7.4 To evaluate the integrals of the type  $\int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx$ ,  
 $\int \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} dx$  and  $\int \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} dx$ .

$$(i) \quad I = \int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx \quad \text{Put } x = a \sin \theta \\ \therefore dx = a \cos \theta d\theta$$

$$\therefore I = \int \sqrt{a^2 - a^2 \sin^2 \theta} \cdot a \cos \theta d\theta$$

$$= a^2 \int \cos^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \int 2 \cos^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \int (1 + \cos 2\theta) d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \left[ \theta + \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} [\theta + \sin \theta \cos \theta]$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \left[ \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{x}{a} \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{1}{2} a^2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$$

$$(ii) \quad I = \int \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} dx$$

$$= \int \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \cdot \underset{I}{1} \cdot \underset{II}{dx}$$

Integrating by parts

$$= \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \cdot x - \int \frac{1}{2} (x^2 - a^2)^{-1/2} \cdot 2x \cdot x dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}} dx \\
 &= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \int \frac{(x^2-a^2)+a^2}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}} dx \\
 &= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \int \sqrt{x^2-a^2} dx - a^2 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}} \\
 &= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - I - a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2-a^2}]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 2I = x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2-a^2}]$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{2} x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \frac{1}{2} a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2-a^2}]$$

$$(iii) \quad I = \int \sqrt{x^2+a^2} dx$$

$$= \int \sqrt{x^2+a^2} \cdot \frac{1}{1} dx$$

Integrating by parts

$$= \sqrt{x^2+a^2} \cdot x - \int \frac{1}{2} (x^2+a^2)^{-1/2} \cdot 2x \cdot x dx$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} - \int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}} dx$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} - \int \frac{(x^2+a^2)-a^2}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}} dx$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} - \int \sqrt{x^2+a^2} dx + a^2 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} - I + a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}]$$

$$2I = x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} + a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}]$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{2} x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} + \frac{1}{2} a^2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}]$$

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2+1}{\sqrt{x^2+3}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \frac{x^2+1}{\sqrt{x^2+3}} dx \\
 &= \frac{(x^2+3)-2}{\sqrt{x^2+3}} dx \\
 &= \int \sqrt{x^2+3} dx - 2 \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+3}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} x\sqrt{x^2+3} + \frac{3}{2} \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+3}] \\
 &\quad - 2 \log [x + \sqrt{x^2+3}] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} x\sqrt{x^2+3} - \frac{1}{2} \log (x + \sqrt{x^2+3}) \\
 &= \frac{x\sqrt{x^2+3} - \log (x + \sqrt{x^2+3})}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \sqrt{2-3x^2} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \sqrt{2-3x^2} dx \\
 &= \sqrt{3} \int \sqrt{\frac{2}{3} - x^2} dx \\
 &= \sqrt{3} \int \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2 - x^2} dx \\
 &= \sqrt{3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{\frac{2}{3} - x^2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{2}{3} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}}} \right) \right] \\
 &= \sqrt{3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{\frac{2}{3} - x^2} + \frac{1}{3} \sin^{-1} \left( x \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}} \right) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 7.3

Integrate :

- |                                        |                                        |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. $\sqrt{9-4x^2}$                     | 2. $\sqrt{x^2-4}$                      |
| 3. $\sqrt{4-25x^2}$                    | 4. $\sec x \tan x \sqrt{\tan^2 x - 4}$ |
| 5. $\sec x \tan x \sqrt{\sec^2 x + 1}$ | 6. $\sin x \sqrt{\cos^2 x - 4}$        |
| 7. $\cos x \sqrt{4 - \sin^2 x}$        | 8. $x^2 \sqrt{4 - x^6}$                |
| 9. $e^x \sqrt{e^{2x} + 1}$             | 10. $\sqrt{e^{4x} - e^{2x}}$           |

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 7.3

- $\frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{\frac{9}{2} - 4x^2} + \frac{9}{4} \sin^{-1} \frac{2x}{3}$
- $\frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{x^2 - 4} - 2 \log (x + \sqrt{x^2 - 4})$
- $\frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{4 - 25x^2} + \frac{2}{5} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{5x}{2} \right)$
- $\frac{\sec x}{2} \sqrt{\sec^2 x + 3} + \frac{3}{2} \log [\sec x + \sqrt{\sec^2 x + 3}]$
- $\frac{1}{2} \sec x \sqrt{\sec^2 x + 1} + \frac{1}{2} \log [\sec x + \sqrt{\sec^2 x + 1}]$
- $-\left[ \frac{1}{2} \cos x \sqrt{\cos^2 x - 4} - 2 \log \{ \cos x + \sqrt{\cos^2 x - 4} \} \right]$
- $\frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{4 - \sin^2 x} + 2 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{\sin x}{2} \right)$
- $\frac{1}{3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} x^3 \sqrt{4 - x^6} + 2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x^3}{2} \right]$
- $\frac{1}{2} e^x \sqrt{e^{2x} + 1} + \frac{1}{2} \log [e^x + \sqrt{e^{2x} + 1}]$
- $\frac{1}{2} e^x \sqrt{e^{2x} + 1} - \frac{1}{2} \log [e^x + \sqrt{e^{2x} - 1}]$

**7.5 To evaluate an integral of the type  $\int \sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c} \, dx$ .**

**Method.** We transform  $\sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c}$  into either of the possible forms  $\sqrt{A^2 + X^2}$  or  $\sqrt{A^2 - X^2}$  or  $\sqrt{X^2 - A^2}$  where  $X$  is a linear expression of  $x$  and  $A$  is a constant.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \sqrt{5 - 4x - x^2} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

Here,

$$\begin{aligned} 5 - 4x - x^2 &= 5 - (4x + x^2) \\ &= 5 - (4x + x^2 + 4 - 4) \\ &= 5 + 4 - (x^2 + 4x + 4) \\ &= 9 - (x + 2)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \int \sqrt{5 - 4x - x^2} \, dx$$

$$= \int \sqrt{9 - (x + 2)^2} \, dx$$

$$\text{Put } x + 2 = t$$

$$\therefore dx = dt$$

$$= \int \sqrt{9 - t^2} \, dt$$

$$= \int \sqrt{3^2 - t^2} \, dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot t \sqrt{9 - t^2} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot 9 \cdot \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{t}{3} \right)$$

$$= \frac{x + 2}{2} \sqrt{9 - (x + 2)^2} + \frac{9}{2} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x + 2}{3} \right)$$

$$= \frac{x + 2}{2} \sqrt{5 - 4x - x^2} + \frac{9}{2} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x + 2}{3} \right)$$

**7.6 To evaluate an integral of the type  $\int (px + q) \sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c} \, dx$ .**

**Method.** We break up  $(px + q)$  into two parts in one of which there is the differential coefficient of  $ax^2 + bx + c$  and the other a constant. Then the given integral can be easily evaluated.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int (2x-5)\sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

Here  $\frac{d}{dx}(2+3x-x^2) = 3-2x$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int (2x-5)\sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx \\ &= -\int (5-2x)\sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx \\ &= -\int (3-2x)\sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx \\ &\quad - 2 \int \sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx \\ &= I_1 + I_2 \quad (\text{say}) \end{aligned}$$

$$I_1 = \int (3-2x)\sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx$$

Put  $2+3x-x^2 = t$

$\therefore (3-2x) \, dx = dt$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I_1 &= -\int \sqrt{t} \, dt \\ &= -\frac{2}{3} t^{3/2} \\ &= -\frac{2}{3} (2+3x-x^2)^{3/2} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} I_2 &= -2 \int \sqrt{2+3x-x^2} \, dx \\ &= -2 \int \sqrt{2 - \left(x^2 - 3x + \frac{9}{4} - \frac{9}{4}\right)} \, dx \\ &= -2 \int \sqrt{2 + \frac{9}{4} - \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2} \, dx \\ &= -2 \int \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sqrt{17}}{2}\right)^2 - \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2} \, dx \\ &= -2 \left[ \frac{1}{2} \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right) \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sqrt{17}}{2}\right)^2 - \left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{17}{4} \cdot \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x - \frac{3}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{17}}{2}} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$= - \left[ \frac{2x-3}{2} \sqrt{2+3x-x^2} + \frac{17}{4} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{2x-3}{\sqrt{17}} \right) \right]$$

$$\therefore I = I_1 + I_2$$

$$= -\frac{2}{3} (2+3x-x^2)^{3/2} - \frac{2x-3}{2} \sqrt{2+3x-x^2} - \frac{17}{4} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{2x-3}{\sqrt{17}} \right)$$

**EXERCISE 7.4**

Integrate :

- |                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. $\sqrt{x^2 - x + 1}$ | 2. $(3x-2)\sqrt{x^2 + x + 1}$ |
| 3. $\sqrt{15-2x-x^2}$   | 4. $(2x+1)\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}$    |
| 5. $\sqrt{3-2x-2x^2}$   | 6. $(x+1)\sqrt{2x^2+3}$       |
| 7. $\sqrt{5+4x-x^2}$    | 8. $(2x+1)\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}$    |
| 9. $x^2\sqrt{x^2-1}$    | 10. $(x+1)\sqrt{x^2-x+1}$     |

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 7.4**

- $\frac{2x-1}{4} \sqrt{x^2-x+1} + \frac{3}{8} \log \left\{ \frac{2x-1}{2} + \sqrt{x^2-x+1} \right\}$
- $\frac{1}{8} (8x^2-6x+1) \sqrt{x^2+x+1} - \frac{21}{16} \log \left[ \frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}} + \sqrt{\left( \frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}} \right)^2 + 1} \right]$
- $\frac{1}{2} \left[ (x+1) \sqrt{15-2x+x^2} + 16 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x+1}{4} \right) \right]$
- $-\frac{2}{3} (5-4x-x^2)^{3/2} - \frac{3}{2} \left[ (x+2) \sqrt{5-4x-x^2} + 9 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x+2}{3} \right) \right]$
- $\frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( x + \frac{1}{2} \right) \sqrt{3-2x-2x^2} + \frac{7}{2\sqrt{2}} \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{7}} \right) \right]$
- $\frac{1}{6} (2x^2+3)^{3/2} + \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{2x^2+3} + \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{4} \log \left[ x \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} + \sqrt{\frac{2}{3} x^2 + 1} \right]$



$$7. \frac{1}{2}(x-2)\sqrt{5+4x-x^2} + 9\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x-2}{3}\right)$$

$$8. \frac{2}{3}(x^2+2x+5)^{3/2} - \frac{x+1}{2}\sqrt{x^2+2x+5} \\ - 2\log[x+1+\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}]$$

$$9. \frac{1}{3}\left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{x^6-1} - \frac{1}{2}\log\{x^3+\sqrt{x^6-1}\}\right]$$

$$10. \frac{1}{24}(8x^2-10x+1)\sqrt{x^2-x+1} \\ + \frac{9}{16}\log\left[\frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{3}} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{2x-1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)^2+1}\right]$$

# 8

## Integration by Partial Fractions

---

### 8.1 A fraction of the form

$$\frac{a_0x^m + a_1x^{m-1} + \dots + a_m}{b_0x^n + b_1x^{n-1} + \dots + b_n}$$

where  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_m$  and  $b_0, b_1, \dots, b_n$  are constants and  $m, n$  are positive integers is called a *rational algebraic fraction*.

To integrate such fractions, we break them into partial fractions, for which we must remember the following points :

(1) The degree of the numerator of the given fraction should be less than the degree of the denominator of the given fraction. If it is not so, then it must be done by division. Such a form of fraction is called *Proper Fraction*.

(2) The terms of degree 2 or more in the denominator of the fraction should be resolved into possible real linear factors.

### 8.2 Methods of breaking a fraction into partial fraction

(1) *When the denominator is the product of only linear factors :*  
Then

$$\frac{f(x)}{(x+a)(x+b)(x+c)(x+d)} = \frac{A}{x+a} + \frac{B}{x+b} + \frac{C}{x+c} + \frac{D}{x+d}$$

(2) *When there is a repetition of a linear factor in the denominator :* Then

$$\frac{f(x)}{(x+a)^r(x+b)} = \frac{A_1}{x+a} + \frac{A_2}{(x+a)^2} + \dots + \frac{A_r}{(x+a)^r} + \frac{B}{x+b}$$

(3) *When the denominator contains a biquadratic factor :* Then

$$\frac{f(x)}{(x+a)(x^2+b^2)} = \frac{A}{x+a} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2+b^2}$$

(4) When there is a repetition of a quadratic factor in the denominator : Then

$$\frac{f(x)}{(x^2 + a^2)^2 (x+b)} = \frac{Ax+B}{x^2+a^2} + \frac{Cx+D}{(x^2+a^2)^2} + \frac{E}{x+b}$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Case I.** When the denominator contains non-repeated linear factors only.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2}{(x+1)(x-2)(x+3)} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let } \int \frac{x^2}{(x+1)(x-2)(x+3)} = \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{B}{x-2} + \frac{C}{x+3}$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 = A(x-2)(x+3) + B(x+1)(x+3) + C(x+1)(x-2)$$

$$\text{Put } x = -1, \text{ we get } A = -\frac{1}{6}$$

$$\text{Put } x = 2, \text{ we get } B = \frac{4}{15}$$

$$\text{Put } x = -3, \text{ we get } C = \frac{9}{10}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int \frac{x^2}{(x+1)(x-2)(x+3)} dx &= -\frac{1}{6} \int \frac{dx}{x+1} + \frac{4}{15} \int \frac{dx}{x-2} + \frac{9}{10} \int \frac{dx}{x+3} \\ &= -\frac{1}{6} \log(x+1) + \frac{4}{15} \log(x-2) + \frac{9}{10} \log(x+3) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1} = \frac{x^2-1+2}{x^2-1} = 1 + \frac{2}{x^2-1} = 1 + \frac{2}{(x-1)(x+1)}$$

$$\text{Let } \frac{2}{(x-1)(x+1)} = \frac{A}{x-1} + \frac{B}{x+1}$$

$$\therefore 2 = A(x+1) + B(x-1)$$

Put  $x = 1$ , we get  $A = 1$

Put  $x = -1$ , we get  $B = -1$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int \frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1} dx &= \int \left( 1 + \frac{1}{x-1} - \frac{1}{x+1} \right) dx \\ &= x + \log(x-1) - \log(x+1) \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 8.1

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{3x}{(x-2)(x+1)}$

2.  $\frac{1}{(2x+1)(x+1)}$

3.  $\frac{x}{(x-1)(x-2)}$

4.  $\frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2-4)}$

5.  $\frac{1}{x-x^2}$

6.  $\frac{x^2+1}{x(x^2-1)}$

7.  $\frac{x}{(x^2-a^2)(x^2-b^2)}$

8.  $\frac{1}{(x+1)^2-4}$

9.  $\frac{x^2+x+3}{(x-2)(x+1)}$

10.  $\frac{x^2}{x^3+7x+12}$

11.  $\frac{x^3+3}{x^3-3x}$

12.  $\frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)(3x^2+1)}$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 8.1

1.  $2 \log(x-2) + \log(x+1)$

2.  $\log(2x+1) - \log(x+1)$

3.  $\log(x-1) + 2 \log(x-2)$

4.  $-\frac{1}{3} \log(x-1) + \frac{1}{4} \log(x-2) + \frac{1}{12} \log(x-2)$

5.  $\log x - \log(1-x)$

6.  $\log \left( \frac{x^2 - 1}{x} \right)$
7.  $\frac{1}{2(a^2 - b^2)} \log \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x^2 - b^2}$
8.  $\frac{1}{4} \log (x - 1) - \frac{1}{4} \log (x + 3)$
9.  $x + 3 \log (x - 2) - \log (x + 1)$
10.  $\frac{1}{2} x^2 - 7x - 27 \log (x + 3) + 64 \log (x + 4)$
11.  $x + \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{x^2 - 3}{x^2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \log \frac{x - \sqrt{3}}{x + \sqrt{3}}$
12.  $\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} (x\sqrt{3})$

**Case II.** When there is a repetition of a linear factor in the denominator.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{x^2 + 1}{(x + 1)^2 (x - 2)} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let } \frac{x^2 + 1}{(x + 1)^2 (x - 2)} = \frac{A}{x + 1} + \frac{B}{(x + 1)^2} + \frac{C}{x - 2}$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 1 = A(x + 1)(x - 2) + B(x - 2) + C(x + 1)^2 \quad \dots (1)$$

Put  $x = -1$ , we get

$$B = -\frac{2}{3}$$

Put  $x = 2$ , we get

$$C = \frac{5}{9}$$

Equating the coefficients of  $x^2$  on both sides, we get

$$1 = A + C$$

$$\Rightarrow A = 1 - C$$

$$\Rightarrow A = 1 - \frac{5}{9} = \frac{4}{9}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+1}{(x+1)^2(x-1)} dx &= \frac{4}{9} \int \frac{1}{x+1} dx - \frac{2}{3} \int \frac{1}{(x+1)^2} dx + \frac{5}{9} \int \frac{1}{(x-2)} dx \\ &= \frac{4}{9} \log(x-1) + \frac{2}{3} \frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{5}{9} (\log(x-2))\end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 8.2

Integrate :

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. $\frac{x}{(x-1)^2(x-2)}$     | 2. $\frac{3x+1}{(x-1)^3(x+1)}$ |
| 3. $\frac{x^2+1}{(x+1)^3(x-2)}$ | 4. $\frac{1}{x^3-x^2-x+1}$     |
| 5. $\frac{x}{(x-1)^2(x+2)}$     | 6. $\frac{1}{(x+1)^2(x-1)}$    |

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 8.2

- $\frac{1}{x+1} + \log \frac{x-2}{x-1}$
- $\frac{1}{(x-1)^2} - \frac{1}{2(x-1)} + \frac{1}{4} \log \frac{x+1}{x-1}$
- $-\frac{5}{27} \log(x+1) - \frac{4}{9}(x+1)^{-1} + \frac{1}{3}(x+1)^{-2} + \frac{5}{27} \log(x-2)$
- $\frac{1}{4} \log(x+1) - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{x-1} - \frac{1}{4} \log(x-1)$
- $-\frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{2}{9} \log \frac{x-1}{x+2}$
- $\log \frac{x-1}{x+2} + \frac{1}{2(x+1)}$

**Case III.** When the denominator contains a non-repeated quadratic factor.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{1+x+x^2+x^3}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{dx}{1+x+x^2+x^3} &= \int \frac{dx}{1+x+x^2(1+x)} \\ &= \int \frac{dx}{(1+x)(1+x^2)}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Let } \frac{1}{(1+x)(1+x^2)} = \frac{A}{1+x} + \frac{Bx+C}{1+x^2}$$

$$\therefore 1 = A(1+x^2) + (Bx+C)(1+x) \quad \dots (1)$$

In (1) Put  $x = -1$ , we get

$$A = \frac{1}{2}$$

Again (1) can be written as

$$1 = x^2(A+B) + x(B+C) + (A+C)$$

Equating the coefficients of equal powers of  $x$  on both sides, we get

$$A+B=0 \Rightarrow B=-A=-\frac{1}{2}$$

$$B+C=0$$

$$A+C=1 \Rightarrow C=1-A=1-\frac{1}{2}=\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \int \frac{dx}{(1+x)(1+x^2)} &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{dx}{1+x} - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{x-1}{1+x^2} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \log(1+x) - \frac{1}{4} \int \frac{2x dx}{1+x^2} + \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{1}{1+x^2} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \log(x+1) - \frac{1}{4} \log(1+x^2) + \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} x\end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 8.3

**Integrate :**

1.  $\frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2+4)}$

2.  $\frac{x-1}{(x+1)(x^2+1)}$

3.  $\frac{x^2}{(x+b)(x^2+a^2)}$

4.  $\frac{1}{1-x^2}$

5.  $\frac{1}{(x+1)^2(x^2+1)}$

6.  $\frac{x^2}{(x-1)^2(x^2+1)}$

7.  $\frac{1}{x(x^2+1)}$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 8.3**

1.  $\frac{1}{5} \left[ \log(x-1) - \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2+4) - \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{2} \right) \right]$

2.  $-\log(x+1) + \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2+1)$

3.  $\frac{1}{a^2+b^2} \left[ \log(x+b) - \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2+a^2) + \frac{b}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right]$

4.  $-\frac{1}{3} \log(1-x) + \frac{1}{6} \log(1+x+x^2) + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x+1}{\sqrt{3}}$

5.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(x+1) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{x+1} - \frac{1}{4} \log(x^2+1)$

6.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(x-1) - \frac{1}{2(x-1)} - \frac{1}{4} \log(x^2+1)$

7.  $\log x - \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2+1)$

**Case IV.** *Integration of fractions by partial fractions after using substitution method.*

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\cos x}{(1+\sin x)(2+\sin x)} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{\cos x}{(1+\sin x)(2+\sin x)} dx \quad \text{Put } \sin x = t$$

$$\therefore \cos x dx = dt$$

$$\therefore I = \int \frac{dt}{(1+t)(2+t)}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int \left( \frac{1}{1+t} - \frac{1}{2+t} \right) dt \quad [\text{resolving into partial fractions}] \\
&= \int \frac{dt}{1+t} - \int \frac{dt}{2+t} \\
&= \log(1+t) - \log(2+t) \\
&= \log \left( \frac{1+t}{2+t} \right) \\
&= \log \left( \frac{1+\sin x}{2+\sin x} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{1+\sin x}{\sin x(1+\cos x)} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \frac{1+\sin x}{\sin x(1+\cos x)} dx \\
&= \frac{dx}{\sin x(1+\cos x)} + \int \frac{dx}{1+\cos x} \\
&= \int \frac{\sin x dx}{\sin^2 x(1+\cos x)} + \frac{1}{2} \int \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} dx \\
&= \int \frac{\sin x dx}{(1-\cos^2 x)(1+\cos x)} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\tan \frac{x}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} \\
&= \int \frac{\sin x dx}{(1+\cos x)^2(1-\cos x)} + \tan \frac{x}{2} \\
&= I_1 + \tan \frac{x}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Now,  $I_1 = \int \frac{\sin x dx}{(1+\cos x)^2(1-\cos x)} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{Put } \cos x = t \\ \therefore -\sin x dx = dt \end{array}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore I_1 &= - \int \frac{dt}{(1+t)^2(1-t)} \\
&= \int \frac{dt}{(t-1)(1+t)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int \left\{ \frac{-1}{4(t+1)} - \frac{1}{2(t+1)^2} + \frac{1}{4(t+1)} \right\} dt \\
&\quad \text{[resolving the integrand into partial fractions]} \\
&= -\frac{1}{4} \log(t+1) + \frac{1}{2(t+1)} + \frac{1}{4} \log(t-1) \\
&= -\frac{1}{4} \log(\cos x + 1) + \frac{1}{2}(\cos x + 1)^{-1} \\
&\quad \quad \quad + \frac{1}{4} \log(\cos x - 1) \\
\therefore \quad I &= -\frac{1}{4} \log(\cos x + 1) + \frac{1}{2}(\cos x + 1)^{-1} \\
&\quad \quad \quad + \frac{1}{4} \log(\cos x - 1) + \tan \frac{x}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{1}{x(x^n + 1)} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \frac{1}{x(x^n + 1)} dx \\
&= \int \frac{x^{n-1}}{x^n(x^n + 1)} dx && \text{Put } x^n = t \\
&&& \therefore nx^{n-1} dx = dt \\
&&& \therefore x^{n-1} dx = \frac{dt}{n} \\
\therefore \quad I &= \int \frac{dt}{n t(t+1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \int \frac{dt}{t(t+1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \int \left( \frac{1}{t} - \frac{1}{t+1} \right) dt && \text{(breaking into partial fractions)} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} [\log t - \log(t+1)] \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \log \left( \frac{t}{t+1} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \log \left( \frac{x^n}{x^n + 1} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Integrate  $\frac{1}{e^x - 1}$  w.r.t.  $x$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{dx}{e^x - 1} \\ &= \int \frac{e^x dx}{e^x(e^x - 1)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Put } e^x &= t \\ \therefore e^x dx &= dt \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int \frac{dt}{t(t-1)} \\ &= \int \left( \frac{1}{t-1} - \frac{1}{t} \right) dx \quad [\text{breaking the integrand into partial fractions}] \\ &= \log(t-1) - \log t \\ &= \log \left( \frac{t-1}{t} \right) \\ &= \log \left( \frac{e^x - 1}{e^x} \right) \end{aligned}$$

#### EXERCISE 8.4

Integrate :

1.  $\frac{1}{\sin x(3 + 2 \cos x)}$

2.  $\frac{1}{\cos x(1 + \sin x)}$

3.  $\frac{\sec x}{1 + \operatorname{cosec} x}$

4.  $\frac{1 - \cos x}{\cos x(1 + \cos x)}$

5.  $\frac{1}{\sin x + \sin 2x}$

6.  $\frac{\sec^2 x}{(\tan x + 1)(\tan x + 2)}$

7.  $\frac{1}{x(x^2 + 1)^2}$

8.  $\frac{1}{(e^x - 1)^2}$

9.  $\frac{1}{x(x^6 - 1)}$

10.  $\frac{1}{e^x + 1}$

11.  $\frac{1}{x(x^4 + 1)}$

12.  $\frac{1}{(x^2 + a^2)(x^2 + b^2)}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 8.4

1.  $\frac{1}{10} \log(1 - \cos x) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 + \cos x) + \frac{2}{5} \log(3 + 2 \cos x)$
2.  $\frac{1}{4} \left[ \log \frac{1 + \sin x}{1 - \sin x} - \frac{2}{1 + \sin x} \right]$
3.  $\frac{1}{4} \left[ \log \frac{1 + \sin x}{1 - \sin x} + \frac{2}{1 + \sin x} \right]$
4.  $\log(\sec x + \tan x) - 2 \tan \frac{x}{2}$
5.  $\frac{1}{2} \log(1 + \cos x) + \frac{1}{6} \log(1 - \cos x) - \frac{2}{3} \log(1 + 2 \cos x)$
6.  $\log \left( \frac{1 + \tan x}{2 + \tan x} \right)$
7.  $\frac{1}{4(x^2 + 1)^2} + \frac{1}{2(x^2 + 1)} - \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2 + 1) + \log x$
8.  $x - \log(e^x - 1) - \frac{1}{e^x - 1}$
9.  $\frac{1}{n} \log \frac{x^n - 1}{x^n}$
10.  $\log \frac{e^x}{e^x + 1}$
11.  $\frac{1}{4} \log \frac{x^4}{x^4 + 1}$
12.  $\frac{1}{a^2 - b^2} \left[ \frac{1}{b} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{b} - \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right]$

# 9

## Integration of Transcendental Functions

---

**9.1** The functions which are not algebraic are called Transcendental Functions. They include Trigonometric Functions, Exponential Functions, Logarithmic Functions and Hyperbolic Functions, etc.

**9.2** To evaluate  $\int \sin^n x \, dx$  or  $\int \cos^n x \, dx$  when  $n$  is an odd +ve integer.

**Method.**

(i) When the index of  $\sin x$  is an odd +ve integer,

Put  $\cos x = t$

(ii) When the index of  $\cos x$  is an odd +ve integer,

Put  $\sin x = t$

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \sin^3 x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \sin^3 x \, dx$$

$$= \int \sin^2 x \sin x \, dx$$

$$= \int (1 - \cos^2 x) \sin x \, dx$$

$$\text{Put } \cos x = t$$

$$\therefore -\sin x \, dx = dt$$

$$\therefore I = - \int (1 - t^2) dt$$

$$= \int (t^2 - 1) dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{t^3}{3} - t \\
 &= \frac{\cos^3 x}{3} - \cos x
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \cos^3 x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \cos^3 x \, dx \\
 &= \int \cos^2 x \cdot \cos x \, dx \\
 &= \int (1 - \sin^2 x) \cos x \, dx \quad \text{Put } \sin x = t \\
 &\quad \quad \quad \therefore \cos x \, dx = dt \\
 \therefore I &= \int (1 - t^2) \, dt \\
 &= t - \frac{t^3}{3} \\
 &= \sin x - \frac{\sin^3 x}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

**9.3** To evaluate  $\int \sin^n x \, dx$  or  $\int \cos^n x \, dx$  when  $n$  is a +ve even integer.

**Method.** We express  $\sin^n x$  or  $\cos^n x$  in a series of cosines of multiple angles of  $x$  by using the formulae

$$\sin^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos^2 x = \frac{1 + \cos 2x}{2}$$

and then integrate term by term.

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int \sin^4 \theta \, d\theta$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \sin^4 \theta \, d\theta \\
 &= \int (\sin^2 \theta)^2 \, d\theta \\
 &= \int \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2} \right)^2 \, d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int \frac{1}{4} [1 - 2 \cos 2\theta + \cos^2 2\theta] d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{4} \int \left( 1 - 2 \cos 2\theta + \frac{1 + \cos 4\theta}{2} \right) d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{8} \int [3 - 4 \cos 2\theta + \cos 4\theta] d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{8} \left[ 3\theta - 2 \sin 2\theta + \frac{\sin 4\theta}{4} \right]
\end{aligned}$$

**9.4 To evaluate  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x dx$**

**Method.**

- (i) If  $m$  is an odd positive integer, then put  $\cos x = t$ .
- (ii) If  $n$  is an odd positive integer, then put  $\sin x = t$ .
- (iii) If  $(m + n)$  is an even negative integer, put  $\tan x = t$ .

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x dx \\
&= \int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x \cdot \sin x dx \\
&= \int (1 - \cos^2 x) \cos^2 x \sin x dx \quad \text{Put } \cos x = t \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad \therefore -\sin x dx = dt
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore I &= - \int (1 - t^2) t^2 dt \\
&= - \int (t^2 - t^4) dt \\
&= \int (t^4 - t^2) dt \\
&= \frac{t^5}{5} - \frac{t^3}{3} \\
&= \frac{\cos^5 x}{5} - \frac{\cos^3 x}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{dx}{\sin^3 x \cos^5 x}$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int \frac{dx}{\sin^3 x \cos^5 x}$$

Here  $m = -3,$

$n = -5$

$\therefore m + n = -8,$

an even -ve integer

[Dividing numerator & denominator of the integrand by  $\cos^8 x$ ]

$$= \int \frac{\sec^8 x}{\tan^3 x} dx$$

$$= \int \frac{\sec^6 x \sec^2 x}{\tan^3 x} dx$$

$$= \int \frac{(1 + \tan^2 x)^3 \sec^2 x}{\tan^3 x} dx$$

Put  $\tan x = t$

$\therefore \sec^2 x dx = dt$

$$\therefore I = \int \frac{(1 + t^2)^3}{t^3} dt$$

$$= \frac{1 + t^6 + 3t^2 + 3t^4}{t^3} dt$$

$$= \int \left( \frac{1}{t^3} + t^3 + \frac{3}{t} + 3t \right) dt$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2t^2} + \frac{t^4}{4} + 3 \log t + 3 \frac{t^2}{2}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2 \tan^2 x} + \frac{\tan^4 x}{4} + 3 \log \tan x + \frac{3 \tan^2 x}{2}$$

### EXERCISE 9.1

Integrate :

1.  $\sin^5 x$

2.  $\cos^7 x$

3.  $\cos^4 x$

4.  $\sin^6 x$

5.  $\sin^3 x \cos^4 x$

6.  $\sin^2 x \cos^7 x$

7.  $\sin^{\frac{2}{3}} x \cos^3 x$

8.  $\sin^5 x \cos^3 x$



9.  $\sin^3 x \cos^3 x$                       10.  $\sin^5 x \cos^{\frac{1}{2}} x$   
 11.  $\sec x \tan^3 x$                       12.  $\sin^3 x \cos^2 2x$   
 13.  $\frac{1}{\sin^2 x \cos^4 x}$                       14.  $\frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^4 x}$   
 15.  $\sec^{\frac{2}{3}} x \operatorname{cosec}^{\frac{3}{4}} x$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 9.1

1.  $-\cos x + \frac{2}{3} \cos^3 x - \frac{1}{5} \cos^5 x$   
 2.  $\sin x - \sin^3 x + \frac{3}{5} \sin^5 x - \frac{1}{7} \sin^7 x$   
 3.  $\frac{1}{8} \left[ 3x + 2 \sin 2x + \frac{\sin 4x}{4} \right]$   
 4.  $\frac{1}{32} \left[ 10x - \frac{15}{2} \sin 2x + \frac{3}{2} \sin 4x - \frac{1}{6} \sin x \right]$   
 5.  $-\left[ \frac{1}{5} \cos^5 x - \frac{2}{7} \cos^7 x + \frac{1}{9} \cos^9 x \right]$   
 6.  $\frac{1}{3} \sin^3 x - \frac{3}{5} \sin^5 x + \frac{3}{7} \sin^7 x - \frac{1}{9} \sin^9 x$   
 7.  $\frac{3}{5} \sin^{\frac{3}{2}} x - \frac{3}{11} \sin^{\frac{5}{2}} x$   
 8.  $\frac{\sin^6 x}{6} - \frac{\sin^8 x}{8}$   
 9.  $\frac{\sin^4 x}{4} - \frac{\sin^6 x}{6}$   
 10.  $-\frac{2}{3} \cos^{\frac{3}{2}} x + \frac{4}{7} \cos^{\frac{5}{2}} x - \frac{2}{11} \cos^{\frac{7}{2}} x$   
 11.  $\frac{1}{3} \sec^3 x - \sec x$

$$12. -\cos x + \frac{5}{3} \cos^3 x - \frac{8}{5} \cos^5 x + \frac{4}{7} \cos^7 x$$

$$13. -\cot x + 2 \tan x + \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x$$

$$14. \frac{\tan^3 x}{3}$$

$$15. -4 \cot^{\frac{1}{4}} x$$

# 10

## Definite Integrals

---

**10.1** If  $\frac{d}{dx} F(x) = f(x)$ , then

$$\int f(x) dx = F(x)$$

$\int f(x) dx$  or  $F(x)$  is called an indefinite integral or an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ .

Also  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$  is called the definite integral of  $f(x)$  between the limits  $a$  and  $b$  and is given by

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = [F(x)]_a^b = F(b) - F(a)$$

Here  $a$  is called the lower limit of integration and  $b$  is called the upper limit of integration. The interval  $[a, b]$  is called the range of integration.

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx \\ &= (\sin^{-1} x)_0^1 \\ &= \sin^{-1}(1) - \sin^{-1}(0) = \frac{\pi}{2} - 0 = \frac{\pi}{2} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \frac{(\tan^{-1} x)^2}{1+x^2} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^1 \frac{(\tan^{-1} x)^2}{1+x^2} dx$$

Put  $\tan^{-1} x = t$ 

$$\therefore \frac{1}{1+x^2} dx = dt$$

When  $x = 0$ , then

$$t = \tan^{-1} 0 = 0$$

When  $x = 1$ , then

$$t = \tan^{-1} 1 = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int_0^{\pi/4} t^2 dt \\ &= \left( \frac{t^3}{3} \right)_0^{\pi/4} \\ &= \frac{\pi^3}{192} - 0 = \frac{\pi^3}{192} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^2 \sqrt{\frac{2+x}{2-x}} dx$ .**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^2 \sqrt{\frac{2+x}{2-x}} dx$$

Put  $x = 2 \cos 2\theta$ 

$$\therefore dx = -4 \sin 2\theta d\theta$$

When  $x = 0$ ,  $2 \cos 2\theta = 0$ 

$$\therefore \cos 2\theta = 0 = \cos \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore 2\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

When  $x = 2$ , then

$$2 \cos 2\theta = 2$$

$$\therefore \cos 2\theta = 1 = \cos 0$$

$$\therefore 2\theta = 0$$

$$\therefore \theta = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_{\pi/4}^0 \sqrt{\frac{2+2\cos 2\theta}{2-2\cos 2\theta}} (-4 \sin 2\theta) d\theta \\
 &= -4 \int_{\pi/4}^0 \sqrt{\frac{1+\cos 2\theta}{1-\cos 2\theta}} \cdot \sin 2\theta d\theta \\
 &= -4 \int_{\pi/4}^0 \sqrt{\frac{2\cos^2 \theta}{2\sin^2 \theta}} 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= -8 \int_{\pi/4}^0 \cos^2 \theta d\theta = -4 \int_{\pi/4}^0 2 \cos^2 \theta d\theta \\
 &= -4 \int_{\pi/4}^0 (1 + \cos 2\theta) d\theta \\
 &= -4 \left[ \theta + \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]_{\pi/4}^0 \\
 &= -4 \left[ (0+0) - \left( \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \right] \\
 &= 4 \left( \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{1}{2} \right) = \pi + 2
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int_1^3 \frac{\cos \log x}{x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_1^3 \frac{\cos \log x}{x} dx$$

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \text{Put} & \log x = t \\
 \therefore & \frac{1}{x} dx = dt
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore I = \int_0^{\log 3} \cos t dt$$

$$\text{When } x = 1, t = \log 1 = 0$$

$$\text{When } x = 3, t = \log 3$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (\sin t)_0^{\log 3} \\
 &= \sin \log 3 - \sin 0 \\
 &= \sin \log 3 - 0 = \sin \log 3
 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 10.1

Evaluate :

1.  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec x \tan x \, dx$
2.  $\int_1^1 \frac{dx}{x}$
3.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} x \cos x \, dx$
4.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 x \, dx$
5.  $\int_0^{\pi} \cos^3 x \, dx$
6.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^4 x \, dx$
7.  $\int_0^{\pi/3} \frac{\cos x}{3 + \sin x} \, dx$
8.  $\int_0^a (a^2 - x^2) \, dx$
9.  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^2 x \, dx$
10.  $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^3 x \, dx$
11.  $\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} \operatorname{cosec}^2 x \, dx$
12.  $\int_0^{\pi/6} \frac{\sec^2 2x}{2} \, dx$
13.  $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin \tan^{-1} x}{1 + x^2} \, dx$
14.  $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} \, dx$
15.  $\int_0^{1/2} \frac{x \sin^4 x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}} \, dx$
16.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\cos x \, dx}{(1 + \sin x)(2 + \sin x)}$
17.  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos \left( x + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \, dx$
18.  $\int_0^{\pi} x \sin^2 x \, dx$
19.  $\int_0^1 \frac{5x^2}{\sqrt{1 - x^4}} \, dx$
20.  $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^2 \, dx}{(x^2 + a^2)(x^2 + b^2)}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 10.1

1.  $\sqrt{2} - 1$
2.  $\log 3$
3.  $\frac{\pi}{2} - 1$
4.  $\frac{2}{3}$
5. 0
6.  $\frac{3\pi}{16}$
7.  $\frac{1}{4} \left[ \log \left( \frac{3 + 2\sqrt{3}}{3} \right) \right]$
8.  $\frac{2}{3} a^3$

9.  $1 - \frac{\pi}{4}$

10.  $\frac{2}{3}$

11.  $-2$

12.  $\frac{1}{4}$

13.  $1$

14.  $a^3 \frac{(\pi - 2)}{4}$

15.  $\frac{1}{2} - \sqrt{3} \frac{\pi}{12}$

16.  $\log_e \left( \frac{4}{3} \right)$

17.  $1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

18.  $\frac{\pi^2}{4}$

19.  $\frac{5\pi}{8}$

20.  $\frac{\pi}{2(a+b)}$

**10.2 Properties of Definite Integrals****Property I**

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^b f(t) dt$$

**Proof**

Let  $\int_a^b f(x) dx = F(x) + c$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } \int_a^b f(x) dx &= [F(x) + c]_a^b \\ &= [F(b) + c] - [F(a) + c] \\ &= F(b) - F(a) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly

$$\int_a^b f(t) dt = F(b) - F(a)$$

**Property II**

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = - \int_b^a f(x) dx$$

**Proof**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{R.H.S.} &= - \int_b^a f(x) dx \\ &= - [F(x) + c]_b^a \end{aligned}$$

$$= F(b) - F(a)$$

$$= \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

Hence Proved

**Property III**

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$$

where  $a < c < b$ **Proof**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{R.H.S.} &= \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx \\ &= [F(x) + C]_a^c + [F(x) + C]_c^b \\ &= F(c) - F(a) + F(b) - F(c) \\ &= F(b) - F(a) \\ &= \int_a^b f(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

Hence Proved

**Property IV**

$$\int_0^a f(x) dx = \int_0^a f(a-x) dx$$

**Proof**

Let  $I = \int_0^a f(a-x) dx$

Put  $a - x = t$

$\therefore -dx = dt$

$\therefore dx = -dt$

When  $x = 0$ ,  $t = a - 0 = a$

$\therefore I = - \int_a^0 f(t) dt$

$= \int_0^a f(t) dt$  by II

$= \int_0^a f(x) dx$  by I

$= \text{L.H.S.}$  Hence Proved



**Property V**

$$\int_{-a}^{+a} f(x) dx = 2 \int_0^a f(x) dx \text{ if } f(x) \text{ is an even function of } x.$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \begin{aligned} f(-x) &= f(x) \\ &= 0 \text{ if } f(x) \text{ is an odd function of } x. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad f(-x) = -f(x)$$

**Proof**

Since  $-a < 0 < a$

$$\therefore \int_{-a}^{+a} f(x) dx = \int_{-a}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad \text{by III}$$

In First integral put  $x = -t$

$$\therefore dx = -dt$$

when  $x = -a$ ,  $t = a$ ,

when  $x = 0$ ,  $t = 0$

$$= - \int_a^0 f(-t) dt + \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

$$= \int_0^a f(-t) dt + \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad \text{by II}$$

$$= \int_0^a f(-x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad \text{by I}$$

$$(i) \quad = \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

when  $f(x)$  is an even function of  $x$

$$= 2 \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

and (ii)

$$= - \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

when  $f(x)$  is an odd function of  $x$

$$= 0$$

Hence Proved

**Property VI**

$$\int_0^{2a} f(x) dx = 2 \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad \text{if } f(2a-x) = f(x)$$

$$\text{if } f(2a-x) = -f(x)$$

$$= 0$$

**Proof**

Since  $0 < a < 2a$

$$\therefore \int_0^{2a} f(x) dx = \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_a^{2a} f(x) dx \quad \text{by III}$$

In second integral,

put  $x = 2a - y$

..  $dx = -dy$

when  $x = a, y = a$

when  $x = 2a, y = 0$

$\therefore$  Given integral

$$\begin{aligned} &= \int_0^a f(x) dx - \int_a^0 f(2a - y) dy \\ &= \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(2a - y) dy \quad \text{by II} \\ &= \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(2a - x) dx \quad \text{by I} \\ \text{(i)} \quad &= \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx \\ &\quad \text{if } f(2a - x) = f(x) \\ &= 2 \int_0^a f(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and (ii)} \quad &= \int_0^a f(x) dx + \int_0^a -f(x) dx \\ &= 0 \quad \text{if } f(2a - x) = -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 1.** Prove that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin x dx &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \cos x dx = -\frac{\pi}{2} \log_e 2 \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} \log_e \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin x dx \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{or,} \quad I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - x \right) dx \quad \text{by IV}$$

$$\text{or,} \quad I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \cos x dx \quad \dots (2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 2I &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin x \, dx + \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \cos x \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (\log \sin x + \log \cos x) \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (\log \sin x + \log \cos x + \log 2 - \log 2) \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \log (2 \sin x \cos x) \, dx - \int_0^{\pi/2} \log 2 \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin 2x \, dx - \log 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

In first integral,

put  $2x = \theta$

$\therefore 2 \, dx = d\theta$

$\therefore dx = \frac{d\theta}{2}$

when  $x = 0$ ,  $\theta = 0$

when  $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,  $\theta = \pi$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore 2I &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi} \log \sin \theta \, d\theta - \log 2 (x)_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin \theta \, d\theta - (\log 2) \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{by VI} \\
 &\quad [\sin(\pi - \theta) = \sin \theta] \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin x \, dx - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2 \quad \text{by I} \\
 &= I - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 2I - I = -\frac{\pi}{2} \log 2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= -\frac{\pi}{2} \log_e 2 \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} (\log_e 1 - \log_e 2) \quad [\because \log_e 1 = 0] \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} \log_e (1/2)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx \quad \dots (1)$$

or 
$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)}}{\sqrt{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)} + \sqrt{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)}} dx \text{ by (IV)}$$

or 
$$I = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\cos x}}{\sqrt{\cos x} + \sqrt{\sin x}} dx \quad \dots (2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned} 2I &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx \\ &\quad + \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\cos x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} 1 dx = (x)_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \therefore I &= \frac{\pi}{4} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \sin x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \sin x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx \quad \dots (1)$$

Using IV,

$$I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(\pi - x) \sin(\pi - x) dx}{1 + \cos^2(\pi - x)}$$

$$\text{or} \quad I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(\pi - x) \sin x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx \quad \dots (2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we get

$$2I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(x + \pi - x) \sin x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx$$

$$= \pi \int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x}{1 + \cos^2 x} dx$$

$$\text{Put} \quad \cos x = t$$

$$\therefore -\sin x dx = dt$$

$$\therefore \sin x dx = -dt$$

$$\text{when } x = 0, t = \cos 0 = 1$$

$$\text{when } x = \pi, t = \cos \pi = -1$$

$$\therefore \quad 2I = -\pi \int_1^{-1} \frac{dt}{1+t^2}$$

$$= \pi \int_{-1}^1 \frac{dt}{1+t^2} \quad \text{by II}$$

$$= 2\pi \int_0^1 \frac{dt}{1+t^2} \quad \text{by V}$$

$\therefore$  integrand is an even function of  $t$

$$= 2\pi (\tan^{-1} t)_0^1$$

$$= 2\pi (\tan^{-1} 1 - \tan^{-1} 0)$$

$$= 2\pi \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - 0 \right) = \frac{\pi^2}{2}$$

$$\therefore \quad I = \frac{\pi^2}{4}$$

**Example 4.** Show that

$$\int_0^{\pi/4} \log(1 + \tan \theta) d\theta = \frac{\pi}{8} \log_e 2.$$

Solution :

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/4} \log(1 + \tan \theta) d\theta \quad \dots (1)$$

Using IV

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \log \left\{ 1 + \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \theta \right) \right\} d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \log \left\{ 1 + \frac{\tan \frac{\pi}{4} - \tan \theta}{1 + \tan \frac{\pi}{4} \tan \theta} \right\} d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \log \left\{ 1 + \frac{1 - \tan \theta}{1 + \tan \theta} \right\} d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \log \left( \frac{2}{1 + \tan \theta} \right) d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \log 2 d\theta - \int_0^{\pi/4} \log(1 + \tan \theta) d\theta \\ &= \log 2 \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \right) - I \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or,} \quad 2I = \frac{\pi}{4} \log 2$$

$$\text{or,} \quad I = \frac{\pi}{8} \log_2 2$$

**EXERCISE 10.2**

Evaluate :

- $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin x}{\sin x + \cos x} dx$
- $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sqrt{\cot x}}{\sqrt{\cot x} + \sqrt{\tan x}} dx$
- $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{1 + \tan x}$
- $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{1 + \cot x}$
- $\int_0^{\pi/2} \log \tan x dx$
- $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^2 x dx$
- $\int_0^{\pi} \cos^3 x dx$

8.  $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^2 \theta (1 + 2 \cos \theta) (1 + \cos \theta)^2 d\theta$
9.  $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \tan x dx}{\sec x + \tan x}$
10.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^2 x dx}{\sin x + \cos x}$
11.  $\int_0^{\infty} \log \left( x + \frac{1}{x} \right) \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$
12.  $\int_0^1 \frac{\log(1+x)}{1+x^2} dx$
13.  $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x} dx$
14.  $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x dx}{1 + \cos \alpha \sin x}$
15.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{x \sin x \cos x dx}{\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 10.2

1.  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
2.  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
3.  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
4.  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
5. 0
6.  $\frac{4}{3}$
7. 0
8.  $\frac{8}{3}$
9.  $\pi \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - 1 \right)$
10.  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log(\sqrt{2} + 1)$
11.  $\pi \log_e 2$
12.  $\frac{\pi}{8} \log_e 2$
13.  $\frac{\pi^2}{2ab}$
14.  $\pi \alpha \operatorname{cosec} \alpha$
15.  $\frac{\pi^2}{16}$

## 10.3 Definition of a definite integral as the limit of a sum

If  $f(x)$  is a continuous and single valued function of  $x$  in the closed interval  $[a, b]$  then

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \left[ f(a) + f(a+h) + f(a+2h) + \dots + f(a + \overline{n-1} h) \right]$$

where  $nh = b - a$  is called the definite integral of  $f(x)$  between the limits  $a$  and  $b$  and is written as  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ ,

**Note 1.** The above method of evaluating  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$

$$\text{i.e. } \int_a^b f(x) dx = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(a) + f(a+h) + f(a+2h) + \dots + f(a - \overline{n-1}h)]$$

where  $nh = b - a$

is called the **integration by summation** or **integration from definition** as the **limit of a sum** or **integration from first principles** or **integration ab-initio**.

**Note 2.** Proceed to limit as  $h \rightarrow 0$  only after putting  $nh = b - a$ .

**Note 3.** Sum of first  $n$  natural numbers

$$= 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

$\therefore$  Sum of first  $(n-1)$  natural numbers

$$= 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (n-1) = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

**Note 4.** Sum of the squares of first  $n$  natural numbers

$$= 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2$$

$$= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$$

$\therefore$  Sum of the squares of first  $(n-1)$  natural numbers

$$= \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6}$$

**Note 5.** Sum of the cubes of first  $n$  natural numbers

$$\text{i.e. } = 1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \dots + n^3 = \left[ \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right]^2$$

$\therefore$  Sum of the cubes of first  $(n-1)$  natural numbers

$$\text{i.e. } = 1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \dots + (n-1)^3 = \left[ \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \right]^2$$



**Example 1.** Evaluate by definition of definite integral as the limit of a sum

$$\int_a^b x^2 dx.$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b x^2 dx & \quad \text{[Here } f(x) = x^2\text{]} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \left[ a^2 + (a-h)^2 + (a+2h)^2 \right. \\ & \quad \left. + (a+3h)^2 + \dots + (a + \overline{n-1}h)^2 \right] \\ & \quad \text{where } nh = b - a \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \left[ na^2 + 2ah \{1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + \overline{n-1}\} \right. \\ & \quad \left. + h^2 \{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + (\overline{n-1})^2\} \right] \\ & \quad \text{where } nh = b - a \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \left[ na^2 + \frac{2ahn(n-1)}{2} \right. \\ & \quad \left. + h^2 \frac{n(n-1)(2n-1)}{6} \right] \\ & \quad \text{where } nh = b - a \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left[ nh a^2 + nh(nh-h)a \right. \\ & \quad \left. + nh(nh-h) \frac{\left( nh - \frac{h}{2} \right)}{3} \right] \\ & \quad \text{where } nh = b - a \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left[ (b-a)a^2 + (b-a)(b-a-h)a \right. \\ & \quad \left. + \frac{1}{3}(b-a)(b-a-h) \left( b-a - \frac{h}{2} \right) \right] \\ &= (b-a)a^2 + (b-a)^2 a + \frac{(b-a)^3}{3} \\ &= (b-a) \left[ a^2 + (b-a)a + \frac{(b-a)^2}{3} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (b-a) \left[ a^2 + (b-a) \left\{ a + \frac{b-a}{3} \right\} \right] \\
&= (b-a) \left[ a^2 + (b-a) \frac{(b+2a)}{3} \right] \\
&= (b-a) \left[ \frac{3a^2 + b^2 + 2ab - ab - 2a^2}{3} \right] \\
&= \frac{(b-a)(a^2 + b^2 + ab)}{3} \\
&= \frac{b^3 - a^3}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 10.3**

Evaluate the following definite integrals by definition of a definite integral as the limit of sum :

1.  $\int_a^b x \, dx$

2.  $\int_a^b e^x \, dx$

3.  $\int_a^b \sin x \, dx$

4.  $\int_a^b \cos x \, dx$

5.  $\int_a^b \frac{1}{x^3} \, dx$

6.  $\int_a^b \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} \, dx$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 10.3**

1.  $\frac{b^2 - a^2}{2}$

2.  $e^b - e^a$

3.  $\cos a - \cos b$

4.  $\sin b - \sin a$

5.  $\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b}$

6.  $2(\sqrt{b} - \sqrt{a})$

**10.4 Summation of Series**

The definition of definite integral as the limit of sum enables us to express the limits of sums of series of a certain type as definite integrals and thus evaluate them.

We have seen that

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \text{Lt}_{h \rightarrow 0} h [f(a) + f(a+h) + f(a+2h) + \dots + f(a+(n-1)h)]$$

where  $nh = b - a$

$$= \text{Lt}_{h \rightarrow 0} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} hf(a+rh)$$

where  $nh = b - a$

Now put  $a = 0$  and  $b = 1$

$$\therefore \int_0^1 f(x) dx = \text{Lt}_{h \rightarrow 0} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} hf(rh)$$

where  $nh = 1 - 0 = 1$

$$= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{n} f\left(\frac{r}{n}\right)$$

$$\therefore nh = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow h = \frac{1}{n}$$

$$\text{and } h \rightarrow 0$$

$$\Rightarrow n \rightarrow \infty$$

$$\text{i.e. } \int_0^1 f(x) dx = \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{n} f\left(\frac{r}{n}\right)$$

Comparing the two sides of the above result we infer that in order to write down the corresponding definite integral, replace

(i)  $\frac{r}{n}$  by  $x$

(ii)  $\frac{1}{n}$  by  $dx$

and

(iii)  $\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum$  by  $\int$  sign.

The lower and upper limits of definite integral are the values of  $\frac{r}{n}$  for the first and the last term (when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $h \rightarrow 0$ ).

**Note.** In order that a series may be capable of being summed up by the above formula, it must possess the following properties :

- (i) It must be possible to write the terms in the form  $\frac{1}{n} f\left(\frac{r}{n}\right)$ , so that  $\frac{1}{n}$ , which tends to zero, is a factor of every term and all the terms are the functions of the same variable  $\frac{r}{n}$ , which form an A.P. whose common difference is  $\frac{1}{n}$ .
- (ii) The number of terms should be  $n$ ; but since each term tends to zero, the additions or omission of any finite number of terms will not change the required limit.

**Example 1.** Find the limit when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , of the series

$$\frac{1}{n} + \frac{n^2}{(n+1)^3} + \frac{n^2}{(n+2)^3} + \dots + \frac{1}{8n}.$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{1}{n} + \frac{n^2}{(n+1)^3} + \frac{n^2}{(n+2)^3} + \dots + \frac{1}{8n} \right] \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{n^2}{(n+0)^3} + \frac{n^2}{(n+1)^3} + \frac{n^2}{(n+2)^3} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \dots + \frac{n^2}{(n+n)^3} \right] \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{n^2}{(n+r)^3} \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{n^2}{n^3 \left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^3} \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{1}{n} \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^3} \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(1+x)^3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left[ -\frac{1}{2(1+x)^2} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{4} - 1 \right) \\
 &= \frac{3}{8}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Find the limit when  $n \rightarrow \infty$  of the series

$$\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \frac{1}{n+3} + \dots + \frac{1}{3n}.$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \frac{1}{n+3} + \dots + \frac{1}{3n} \right] \\
 &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{1}{n+0} + \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \dots + \frac{1}{n+n} \right] \\
 &\quad + \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2n+1} + \frac{1}{2n+2} + \frac{1}{2n+3} + \dots + \frac{1}{2n+n} \right] \\
 &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{1}{n+r} + \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=1}^n \frac{1}{2n+r} \\
 &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{1}{n} \cdot \frac{1}{1+\frac{r}{n}} + \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{1}{n} \left( 2 + \frac{r}{n} \right) \\
 &= \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1+x} + \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{2+x} \\
 &= [\log(1+x)]_0^1 + [\log(2+x)]_0^1 \\
 &= \log 2 - \log 1 + \log 3 - \log 2 \\
 &= \log_e 3
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Prove that

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n^2} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{2^2}{n^2} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{3^2}{n^2} \right) \dots \left( 1 + \frac{n^2}{n^2} \right) \right]^{1/n} = 2e^{(\pi-4)/2}$$

**Solution :**

Let,

$$P = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \left(1 + \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{2^2}{n^2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{3^2}{n^2}\right) \dots \left(1 + \frac{n^2}{n^2}\right) \right]^{\frac{1}{n}}$$

$$\therefore \log P = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \left[ \log \left(1 + \frac{1^2}{n^2}\right) + \log \left(1 + \frac{2^2}{n^2}\right) + \log \left(1 + \frac{3^2}{n^2}\right) + \dots + \log \left(1 + \frac{n^2}{n^2}\right) \right]$$

$$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{r=0}^n \log \left(1 + \frac{r^2}{n^2}\right)$$

$$= \int_0^1 1 \cdot \log(1 + x^2) dx$$

$$= \left[ \log(1 + x^2) x \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{2x}{1 + x^2} \cdot x dx$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 \int_0^1 \frac{(x^2 + 1) - 1}{1 + x^2} dx$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 \int_0^1 \left(1 - \frac{1}{1 + x^2}\right) dx$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 \left[ x - \tan^{-1} x \right]_0^1$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 [1 - \tan^{-1} 1]$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 + 2 \tan^{-1} 1$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 + 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{4}$$

$$= \log 2 - 2 + \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore \log P - \log 2 = \frac{\pi}{2} - 2 = \frac{\pi - 4}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \log \frac{P}{2} = \frac{\pi - 4}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{P}{2} = e^{\frac{\pi - 4}{2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow P = 2e^{\frac{\pi - 4}{2}}$$

**Example 4.** Apply the definition of a definite integral as the limit of a sum to evaluate  $\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{n!}{n^n} \right)^{1/n}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } P &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{n!}{n^n} \right)^{1/n} \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{1, 2, 3, \dots, n}{n, n, n, \dots, n} \right)^{1/n} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \log P &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \left[ \log \frac{1}{n} + \log \frac{2}{n} + \log \frac{3}{n} + \dots + \log \frac{n}{n} \right] \\ &= \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{r=1}^n \log \frac{r}{n} \\ &= \int_0^1 1 \cdot \log x \, dx \\ &\quad \parallel \quad \mid \\ &= \left[ \log x \cdot x \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{1}{x} \cdot x \, dx \\ &= 0 - \int_0^1 1 \cdot dx \\ &= -(x)_0^1 \\ &= -1 \\ \therefore P &= e^{-1} = \frac{1}{e} \end{aligned}$$

#### EXERCISE 10.4

Find the limit when  $n \rightarrow \infty$  of the series :

1.  $\frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \frac{1}{n+3} + \dots + \frac{1}{2n}$
2.  $\frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{4}{n^3} + \frac{9}{n^3} + \frac{16}{n^3} + \dots + \frac{n^2}{n^3}$
3.  $\frac{n}{(n+1)^2} + \frac{n}{(n+2)^2} + \dots + \frac{n}{(n+n)^2}$
4.  $\frac{n}{n^2} + \frac{n}{n^2+1^2} + \frac{n}{n^2+1^2} + \dots + \frac{n}{n^2+(n-1)^2}$

$$5. \frac{1^2}{1^2 + n^2} + \frac{2^2}{2^2 + n^2} + \dots + \frac{n^2}{n^2 + n^2}$$

$$6. \frac{n^{1/2}}{n^{3/2}} + \frac{n^{1/2}}{(n+3)^{3/2}} + \frac{n^{1/2}}{(n+6)^{3/2}} + \dots + \frac{n^{1/2}}{[n+3(n-1)]^{3/2}}$$

$$7. \frac{1}{n^2} \sec^2 \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{2}{n^2} \sec^2 \frac{4}{n^2} + \frac{3}{n^2} \sec^2 \frac{9}{n^2} + \dots + \frac{1}{n} \sec^2 \frac{n^2}{n^2}$$

$$8. \frac{1}{n} \left[ \sin^{2n} \frac{\pi}{2n} + \sin^{2n} \frac{2\pi}{2n} + \sin^{2n} \frac{2\pi}{2n} + \dots + \sin^{2n} \frac{\pi}{2} \right]$$

9. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{n} \sqrt{\frac{n+r}{n-r}}$$

10. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n^2 - r^2}}$$

11. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=1}^n \frac{r^3}{r^4 + n^4}$$

12. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \tan \frac{\pi}{2n} \tan \frac{2\pi}{2n} \tan \frac{3\pi}{2n} \dots \tan \frac{n\pi}{2n} \right]^{1/n}$$

13. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{2}{n} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{3}{n} \right) \dots \left( 1 + \frac{n}{n} \right) \right]^{1/n}$$

14. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{r=1}^n \frac{\sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{r} [3\sqrt{r} + 4\sqrt{n}]^2}$$

15. Evaluate

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{1}{n} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{2}{n} \right)^{1/2} \left( 1 + \frac{3}{n} \right)^{1/3} \left( 1 + \frac{4}{n} \right)^{1/4} \dots \left( 1 + \frac{n}{n} \right)^{1/n} \right]$$



## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 10.4

1.  $\log_e 2$

3.  $\frac{1}{2}$

5.  $\frac{1}{3} \log_e 2$

7.  $\frac{1}{2} \tan 1$

9.  $\frac{\pi}{2+1}$

11.  $\frac{1}{4} \log_e 2$

13.  $\frac{4}{e}$

15.  $e^{x^2/12}$

2.  $\frac{1}{3}$

4.  $\frac{\pi}{4}$

6.  $\frac{1}{3}$

8.  $\frac{(2k)!}{[2^k (k!)]^2}$

10.  $\frac{\pi}{2}$

12. 1

14.  $\frac{1}{14}$

# 11

## Reduction Formulae

---

### 11.1 Definition

A formula which connects an integral with another in which the integrand is of the same type, but is of lower degree or is otherwise easier to integrate, is called a *Reduction Formula*.

Usually the reduction formula has to be used repeated to arrive at the integral of the given function. This method of integration is called *Integration by successive reduction*.

Reduction formulae are usually obtained by the method of integration by parts and are useful when the integral cannot be otherwise immediately obtained.

### 11.2 Reduction formula for $\int \sin^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } I_n &= \int \sin^n x \, dx \\ &= \int \sin^{n-1} x \sin x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $\sin^{n-1} x$  as the first function and  $\sin x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sin^{n-1} x (-\cos x) \\ &\quad - \int (n-1) \sin^{n-2} x \cos x (-\cos x) \, dx \\ &= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1) \int \sin^{n-2} x \cos^2 x \, dx \\ &= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1) \int \sin^{n-2} x (1 - \sin^2 x) \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1) \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx \\
&\quad - (n-1) \int \sin^n x \, dx \\
\Rightarrow (1 + \overline{n-1}) \int \sin^n x \, dx \\
&= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1) \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx \\
\Rightarrow n \int \sin^n x \, dx \\
&= -\sin^{n-1} x \cos x + (n-1) \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx \\
\Rightarrow \int \sin^n x \, dx &= -\frac{\sin^{n-1} x \cos x}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.3 Reduction formula for $\int \cos^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Let } I_n &= \int \cos^n x \, dx \\
&= \int \cos^{n-1} x \cos x \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

I
II

Taking  $\cos^{n-1} x$  as the first function and  $\cos x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x \\
&\quad - \int (n-1) \cos^{n-2} x \cdot (-\sin x) \cdot \sin x \, dx \\
&= \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x + (n-1) \int \cos^{n-2} x \cdot \sin^2 x \, dx \\
&= \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x + (n-1) \int \cos^{n-2} x \cdot (1 - \cos^2 x) \, dx \\
&= \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \sin x + (n-1) \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx - (n-1) \int \cos^n x \, dx \\
\Rightarrow (1 + \overline{n-1}) \int \cos^n x \, dx \\
&= \cos^{n-1} x \sin x + (n-1) \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow n \int \cos^n x \, dx - \cos^{n-1} x \sin x + (n-1) \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \cos^n x \, dx = \frac{\cos^{n-1} x \sin x}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

This is the required reduction formula.

#### 11.4 Walli's Formula

If  $n$  is a +ve integer then  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx$  has the value

$$\frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \cdots \frac{2}{3} \text{ if } n \text{ is odd}$$

and the value

$$\frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \cdots \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ if } n \text{ is even}$$

#### Proof

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } I_n &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x \, dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - x \right) dx \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \because \int_0^a f(x) \, dx \\ = \int_0^a f(a-x) \, dx \end{array} \right. \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx \\ &= \left[ \frac{\cos^{n-1} x \sin x}{n} \right]_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \, dx \\ &\quad \text{[using art. 11.2]} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} I_{n-2} \quad \dots (1)$$

Replacing  $n$  by  $n-2$ , we get

$$I_{n-2} = \frac{n-3}{n-2} I_{n-4} \quad \dots (2)$$

Putting the value of  $I_{n-2}$  from (2) in (1), we get

$$I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} I_{n-4} \quad \dots (3)$$

Replace  $n$  by  $n - 4$  in (1), we get

$$I_{n-4} = \frac{n-5}{n-4} I_{n-6} \quad \dots (4)$$

Putting the value of  $I_{n-4}$  from (4) in (3), we get

$$I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} I_{n-6}$$

Proceeding in this manner, we see that two cases arise :

**Case I.** When  $n$  is odd, then

$$I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \dots \frac{2}{3} \cdot I_1$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } I_1 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x \, dx \\ &= (-\cos x)_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \dots \frac{2}{3}$$

**Case II.** When  $n$  is even, then

$$I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \dots \frac{1}{2} \cdot I_0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } I_0 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^0 x \, dx \\ &= (x)_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore I_n = \frac{n-1}{n} \cdot \frac{n-3}{n-2} \cdot \frac{n-5}{n-4} \dots \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$$

### 11.5 Reduction formula for $\int \tan^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } I_n &= \int \tan^n x \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x \tan^2 x \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x (\sec^2 x - 1) \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$= \int \tan^{n-2} x \sec^2 x \, dx - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\text{Put } \tan x = t$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 x \, dx = dt$$

$$= \int t^{n-2} dt - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$= \frac{t^{n-1}}{n-1} - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \tan^n x \, dx = \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.6 Reduction formula for $\int \cot^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\text{Let } I_n = \int \cot^n x \, dx$$

$$= \int \cot^{n-2} x \cdot \cot^2 x \, dx$$

$$= \int \cot^{n-2} x (\operatorname{cosec}^2 x - 1) \, dx$$

$$= \int \cot^{n-2} x \operatorname{cosec}^2 x \, dx - \int \cot^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\text{Put } \cot x = t$$

$$\therefore -\operatorname{cosec}^2 x \, dx = dt$$

$$= - \int t^{n-2} dt - \int \cot^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$= - \frac{t^{n-1}}{n-1} - \int \cot^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \cot^n x \, dx = - \frac{\cot^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \int \cot^{n-2} x \, dx$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.7 Reduction formula for $\int \sec^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\text{Let } I_n = \int \sec^n x \, dx$$

$$= \int \sec^{n-2} x \cdot \sec^2 x \, dx$$

I II

Taking  $\sec^{n-2} x$  as the first function and  $\sec^2 x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sec^{n-2} x \cdot \tan x \\
 &\quad - \int (n-2) \sec^{n-3} x \cdot \sec x \tan x \cdot \tan x \, dx \\
 &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2) \int \sec^{n-2} x \tan^2 x \, dx \\
 &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x - (n-2) \int \sec^n x \, dx + (n-2) \int \sec^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & (1+n-2) \int \sec^n x \, dx \\
 &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x + (n-2) \int \sec^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & (n-1) \int \sec^n x \, dx \\
 &= \sec^{n-2} x \tan x + (n-2) \int \sec^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & \int \sec^n x \, dx = \frac{\sec^{n-2} x \tan x}{n-1} + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \sec^{n-2} x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.8 Reduction formula for $\int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx$ where $n$ is a positive integer

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Let } I_n &= \int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx \\
 &= \int \underbrace{\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x}_I \cdot \underbrace{\operatorname{cosec}^2 x}_{II} \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x$  as the first function and  $\operatorname{cosec}^2 x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cdot (-\cot x) \\
 &\quad - \int (n-2) \operatorname{cosec}^{n-3} x \cdot \{-\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\} \cdot (-\cot x) \, dx \\
 &= -\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot^2 x \, dx \\
 &= -\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x (\operatorname{cosec}^2 x - 1) \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x - (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx \\
 &\quad + (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & (1+n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx \\
 &= -\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x + (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & (n-1) \int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx \\
 &= -\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x + (n-2) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \, dx \\
 \Rightarrow & \int \operatorname{cosec}^n x \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \cot x}{n-1} + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \operatorname{cosec}^{n-2} x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int \sin^6 x \, dx$ .

**Solution :** We know that

$$\int \sin^n x \, dx = -\frac{\sin^{n-1} x \cos x}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \sin^{n-2} x \, dx$$

Put  $n = 6, 4, 2$  in succession, we get

$$\int \sin^6 x \, dx = -\frac{\sin^5 x \cos x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \int \sin^4 x \, dx$$

$$\int \sin^4 x \, dx = -\frac{\sin^3 x \cos x}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \int \sin^2 x \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int \sin^2 x \, dx &= -\frac{\sin x \cos x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \int \sin^0 x \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{\sin x \cos x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot x
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int \sin^6 x \, dx &= -\frac{\sin^5 x \cos x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \int \sin^4 x \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{\sin^5 x \cos x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \left[ -\frac{\sin^3 x \cos x}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \int \sin^2 x \, dx \right]
 \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{\sin^3 x \cos x}{6} - \frac{5}{24} \sin^3 x \cos x + \frac{5}{8} \int \sin^2 x \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\sin^3 x \cos x}{6} - \frac{5}{24} \sin^3 x \cos x + \frac{5}{8} \left[ -\frac{\sin x \cos x}{2} + \frac{x}{2} \right] \\
&= -\frac{\sin^3 x \cos x}{6} - \frac{5}{24} \sin^3 x \cos x - \frac{5}{16} \sin x \cos x + \frac{5x}{16}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \cos^6 x \, dx$ .

**Solution :** We know that

$$\int \cos^n x \, dx = \frac{\cos^{n-1} x \sin x}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

Put  $n = 6, 4, 2$  in succession, we get

$$\int \cos^6 x \, dx = \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \int \cos^4 x \, dx$$

$$\int \cos^4 x \, dx = \frac{\cos^3 x \sin x}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \int \cos^2 x \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \cos^2 x \, dx &= \frac{\cos x \sin x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \int \cos^0 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{\cos x \sin x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot x
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \cos^6 x \, dx &= \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \int \cos^4 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{6} \left[ \frac{\cos^3 x \sin x}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \int \cos^2 x \, dx \right] \\
&= \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{24} \cos^3 x \sin x + \frac{5}{8} \int \cos^2 x \, dx \\
&= \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{24} \cos^3 x \sin x \\
&\quad + \frac{5}{8} \left[ \frac{\cos x \sin x}{2} + \frac{x}{2} \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\cos^5 x \sin x}{6} + \frac{5}{24} \cos^3 x \sin x + \frac{5}{16} \cos x \sin x + \frac{5}{16} x$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^a (a^2 + x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^a (a^2 + x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} dx && \text{Put } x = a \tan \theta \\ &&& \therefore dx = a \sec^2 \theta d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (a^2 + a^2 \tan^2 \theta)^{\frac{3}{2}} \cdot a \sec^2 \theta d\theta \\ &= a^6 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^7 \theta d\theta \\ &= a^6 \left[ \left( \frac{\sec^5 \theta \tan \theta}{6} \right)_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} + \frac{5}{6} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^5 \theta d\theta \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5}{6} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^5 \theta d\theta \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5}{6} \left\{ \left( \frac{\sec^3 \theta + \tan \theta}{4} \right)_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} + \frac{3}{4} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^3 \theta d\theta \right\} \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5}{6} \left\{ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^3 \theta d\theta \right\} \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{12} + \frac{5}{8} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec^3 \theta d\theta \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{12} + \frac{5}{8} \left\{ \left( \frac{\sec \theta \tan \theta}{2} \right)_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sec \theta d\theta \right\} \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{12} + \frac{5}{8} \left\{ \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \{ \log (\sec \theta + \tan \theta) \}_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \right\} \right] \\ &= a^6 \left[ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{12} + \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{16} + \frac{5}{16} \log (\sqrt{2} + 1) \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= a^6 \left[ \frac{32\sqrt{2}}{48} + \frac{20\sqrt{2}}{48} + \frac{15\sqrt{2}}{48} + \frac{5}{16} \log(\sqrt{2} + 1) \right] \\
&= a^6 \left[ \frac{32\sqrt{2} + 20\sqrt{2} + 15\sqrt{2}}{48} + \frac{5}{16} \log(\sqrt{2} + 1) \right] \\
&= a^6 \left[ \frac{67\sqrt{2}}{48} + \frac{5}{16} \log(\sqrt{2} + 1) \right] \\
&= \frac{a^6}{48} [67\sqrt{2} + 15 \log(\sqrt{2} + 1)]
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{d\theta}{\sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \frac{d\theta}{\sin^4 \frac{\theta}{2}} & \text{Put } \frac{\theta}{2} &= t \\
& & \Rightarrow d\theta &= 2dt \\
&= 2 \int \frac{dt}{\sin^4 t} \\
&= 2 \int \operatorname{cosec}^4 t \, dt \\
&= 2 \left[ -\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^2 t \cot t}{3} + \frac{2}{3} \int \operatorname{cosec}^2 t \, dt \right] \\
&= -\frac{2}{3} \operatorname{cosec}^2 t \cot t - \frac{4}{3} \cot t \\
&= -\frac{2}{3} \cot t [\operatorname{cosec}^2 t + 2] \\
&= -\frac{2}{3} \cot \frac{\theta}{2} \left[ \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + 2 \right]
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^3 \theta \, d\theta$ .

**Solution :**

$$I = \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^3 \theta \, d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left( \frac{\tan^4 \theta}{4} \right)_0^{\pi/4} - \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^3 \theta \, d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{4} - \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^3 \theta \, d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{4} - \left[ \left( \frac{\tan^2 \theta}{2} \right)_0^{\pi/4} - \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan \theta \, d\theta \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4} - \left[ \frac{1}{2} - (\log \sec \theta)_0^{\pi/4} \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{4} - \left[ \frac{1}{2} - \log \sqrt{2} \right] \\
&= -\frac{1}{4} + \log \sqrt{2} \\
&= -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} \log 2
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 6.** Evaluate  $\int \cot^4 x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int \cot^4 x \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} - \int \cot^2 x \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} - \int (\operatorname{cosec}^2 x - 1) \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} - (-\cot x - x) \\
&= -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} + \cot x + x
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** If  $\varphi(n) = \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^n x \, dx$ , show that  $\varphi(n) + \varphi(n-2) = \frac{1}{n-1}$  and deduce the value of  $\varphi(5)$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(n) &= \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^n x \, dx \\ &= \left( \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} \right)_0^{\pi/4} - \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^{n-2} x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{n-1} - \varphi_{n-2}\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \varphi_n + \varphi_{n-2} = \frac{1}{n-1} \quad \text{Proved}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } \varphi(5) &= \frac{1}{4} - \varphi_3 \\ &= \frac{1}{4} - \left[ \frac{1}{2} - \varphi_1 \right] \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} + \varphi_1 \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} + \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} + (\log \sec x)_0^{\pi/4} \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} + \log \sqrt{2} \\ &= -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} \log 2\end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** Show that  $\int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^3 4x \, dx = \frac{1}{6}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}I &= \int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^3 4x \, dx & \text{Put } 4x &= t \\ & & \therefore 4dx &= dt \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^3 t \, \frac{dt}{4} & \therefore dx &= \frac{dt}{4} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^3 t \, dt\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{2}{3} && \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{Using Walli's formula} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \frac{1}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 9.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{2a} x^{1/2} (2a-x)^{1/2} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_0^{2a} x^{1/2} (2a-x)^{-1/2} dx \\
 &\quad \text{Put } x = 2a \sin^2 \theta \\
 &\quad \therefore dx = 4a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{1/2} (2a)^{1/2} \sin^0 \theta (2a - 2a \sin^2 \theta)^{-1/2} \cdot 4a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{1/2} (2a)^{1/2} \cdot \sin^0 \theta \cdot (2a)^{-1/2} \cos^{-1} \theta \cdot 4a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= (2a)^{1/2} \cdot 4a \cdot \int_0^{1/2} \sin^0 \theta d\theta \\
 &= 64 a^3 \frac{9}{10} \cdot \frac{7}{8} \cdot \frac{5}{6} \cdot \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} && \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{Using Walli's formula} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \frac{63 \pi a^3}{8}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 10.** If  $I_n = \int_0^a (a^2 - x^2)^n dx$ , and  $n > 0$ , prove that

$$I_n = \frac{2na^2}{2n+1} I_{n-1}.$$

**Solution :** We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_n &= \int_0^a (a^2 - x^2)^n dx && \text{Put } x = a \sin \theta \\
 &\quad \therefore dx = a \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{1/2} (a^2 - a^2 \sin^2 \theta)^n (a \cos \theta) d\theta \\
 &= a^{2n+1} \int_0^{1/2} \cos^{2n+1} \theta d\theta \\
 &= a^{2n+1} \left[ \left( \frac{\cos^{2n} \theta \sin \theta}{2n+1} \right)_0^{1/2} + \frac{2n}{2n+1} \int_0^{1/2} \cos^{2n-1} \theta d\theta \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{2n}{2n+1} a^{2n+1} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{2n-1} \theta \, d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2na^2}{2n+1} \left\{ a^{2n-1} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{2n-1} \theta \, d\theta \right\} \\
 &= \frac{2na^2}{2n+1} I_{n-1}
 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 11.1

Integrate :

- |                                                       |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. $\sin^2 x$                                         | 2. $\sin^3 x$                                      |
| 3. $\sin^4 x$                                         | 4. $\sin^6 x$                                      |
| 5. $\sin^5 x$                                         | 6. $\cos^2 x$                                      |
| 7. $\cos^3 x$                                         | 8. $\cos^4 x$                                      |
| 9. $\cos^5 x$                                         | 10. $\cos^7 x$                                     |
| 11. $\tan^3 x$                                        | 12. $\tan^6 x$                                     |
| 13. $\tan^5 x$                                        | 14. $\cot^5 x$                                     |
| 15. $\cos^6 x$                                        | 16. $\operatorname{cosec}^3 x$                     |
| 17. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^3 x \, dx$                   | 18. $\int (1+x^2)^{3/2} \, dx$                     |
| 19. $\int \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos^3 x} \, dx$            | 20. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^6 x \, dx$                |
| 21. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^8 x \, dx$                   | 22. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{10} x \, dx$             |
| 23. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7 \theta \, d\theta$         | 24. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{13} \theta \, d\theta$   |
| 25. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^4 \theta \, d\theta$         | 26. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^9 \theta \, d\theta$      |
| 27. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin^4 \theta \, d\theta$         | 28. $\int_{\pi}^{\pi/4} \sin^4 2\theta \, d\theta$ |
| 29. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos^2 2\theta \, d\theta$        | 30. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 6\theta \, d\theta$     |
| 31. $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^7 \frac{\theta}{2} \, d\theta$ | 32. $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{(1+x^2)^4}$         |

33.  $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{(a^2 + x^2)^4}$

34.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 x \cos^2 x \, dx$

35.  $\int_0^1 x^6 (1-x^2)^{1/2} \, dx$

36.  $\int_0^3 \left( \frac{x^3}{3-x} \right)^{1/2} \, dx$

37.  $\int_0^a \frac{x^4}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \, dx$

38.  $\int_0^a x^2 \left( \frac{a-x}{a+x} \right)^{1/2} \, dx$

39.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n} x \, dx$

40.  $\int_0^a \frac{x^n \, dx}{\sqrt{ax - x^2}}$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 11.1

1.  $\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x$

2.  $\frac{1}{12}\cos 3x - \frac{3}{4}\cos x$

3.  $-\frac{1}{8}\sin^7 x \cos x + \frac{7}{8} \left\{ -\frac{1}{6}\sin^5 x \cos x - \frac{5}{24}\sin^3 x \cos x - \frac{5}{16}\sin x \cos x + \frac{5x}{16} \right\}$

4.  $-\frac{1}{4}\sin^3 x \cos x - \frac{3}{8}\sin x \cos x + \frac{3}{8}x$

5.  $-\frac{1}{5}\sin^4 x \cos x - \frac{4}{15}(\sin^2 x + 2)\cos x$

6.  $\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x$

7.  $\frac{3}{4}\sin x + \frac{1}{12}\sin 3x$

8.  $\frac{1}{4}\cos^3 x \sin x + \frac{3}{8}(\cos x \sin x + x)$

9.  $\frac{1}{5}\cos^4 x \sin x + \frac{4}{15}\cos^2 x \sin x + \frac{8}{15}\sin x$

10.  $\sin x - \sin^3 x + \frac{3}{5}\sin^5 x - \frac{1}{7}\sin^7 x$

OR



$$-\frac{1}{7} \cos^6 x \sin x + \frac{6}{7} \frac{\cos^4 x \sin x}{5} + \frac{4}{5} \left\{ \frac{\cos^2 x \sin x}{3} + \frac{2}{3} \sin x \right\}$$

$$11. \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x + \log \cos x$$

$$12. \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x - (\tan x - x)$$

$$13. \frac{1}{4} \tan^4 x - \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x - \log \cos x$$

$$14. -\frac{1}{4} \cot^4 x + \frac{1}{2} \cot^2 x + \log \sin x$$

$$15. -\frac{\cot^3 x}{5} - \left\{ -\frac{\cot^3 x}{3} + \cot x + x \right\}$$

$$16. -\frac{\operatorname{cosec} x \cot x}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \log \tan \frac{x}{2}$$

$$17. \frac{1}{2} [\sqrt{2} + \log (1 + \sqrt{2})]$$

$$18. \frac{1}{4} x (1 + x^2)^{3/2} + \frac{3x}{8} (1 + x^2)^{1/2} + \frac{3}{8} \log (x + \sqrt{1 + x^2})$$

$$19. \frac{1}{2} [\sec x \tan x - \log (\sec x + \tan x)]$$

$$20. \frac{5\pi}{32}$$

$$21. \frac{35\pi}{256}$$

$$22. \frac{63\pi}{512}$$

$$23. \frac{16}{35}$$

$$24. \frac{15}{(15 \cdot 13 \cdot 11 \cdot 9 \cdot 7 \cdot 5 \cdot 3)^2}$$

$$25. \frac{3\pi}{16}$$

$$26. \frac{128}{315}$$

$$27. \frac{1}{8} \left( \frac{3\pi}{4} - 2 \right)$$

$$28. \frac{3\pi}{32}$$

$$29. \frac{\pi}{8}$$

$$30. \frac{4}{45}$$

$$31. \frac{32}{35}$$

32.  $\frac{5\pi}{32}$

34.  $\frac{\pi}{32}$

36.  $\frac{9\pi}{8}$

38.  $a^3 \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{2}{3} \right)$

40.  $\frac{\pi \cdot a^n \cdot \{1.3.5.....(2n-1)\}}{2.4.6.....2n}$

33.  $\frac{5\pi}{32a^7}$

35.  $\frac{5\pi}{256}$

37.  $\frac{3\pi a^4}{16}$

39.  $\frac{(2n)}{(2^n n)^2} \frac{\pi}{2}$

**11.9 Reduction formula for  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x dx$** 

This integral may be connected with any one of the following :

(i)  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x dx$

(ii)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x dx$

(iii)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^n x dx$

(iv)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n+2} x dx$

(v)  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x dx$

(vi)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^{n-2} x dx$

**Proofs**

Let  $I_{m,n} = \int \sin^m x \cos^n x dx \quad \dots (1)$

$$= \int \frac{\sin^{m-1} x}{I} \cdot \frac{\cos^n x \sin x}{II} dx$$

Taking  $\sin^{m-1} x$  as the first function and  $\cos^n x \sin x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sin^{m-1} x \cdot \left( -\frac{\cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} \right) \\ &\quad - \int (m-1) \cdot \sin^{m-2} x \cdot \cos x \cdot \left( -\frac{\cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} \right) dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} \\
&\quad \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx \quad \dots (2) \\
&= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} \\
&\quad \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x \{1 - \sin^2 x\} \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} \\
&\quad \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x \, dx - \frac{m-1}{n+1} \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\
\Rightarrow I_{m,n} &\left\{ 1 + \frac{m-1}{n+1} \right\} \\
&= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} I_{m-2,n} \\
\Rightarrow I_{m,n} &\left\{ \frac{m+n}{n+1} \right\} \\
&= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} I_{m-2,n} \\
\Rightarrow I_{m,n} &= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+n} + \frac{m-1}{m+n} I_{m-2,n} \quad \dots (3)
\end{aligned}$$

Writing  $m+2$  for  $m$  in (3), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
I_{m+2,n} &= -\frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+n+2} + \frac{m+1}{m+n+2} I_{m,n} \\
\Rightarrow (m+n+2) I_{m+2,n} &= -\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x + (m+1) I_{m,n} \\
\Rightarrow (m+1) I_{m,n} &= \sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x + (m+n+2) I_{m+2,n}
\end{aligned}$$

Dividing by  $(m+1)$ , we get

$$I_{m,n} = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+1} + \frac{m+n+2}{m+1} I_{m+2,n} \quad \dots (4)$$

(2), (3) and (4) above give the required connections.

Again,

$$\begin{aligned} I_{m,n} &= \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ &= \int \frac{\sin^m x \cos x}{II} \cdot \frac{\cos^{n-1} x}{I} \, dx \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $\cos^{n-1} x$  as the first function,  $\sin^m x \cos x$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \cos^{n-1} x \cdot \frac{\sin^{m+1} x}{m+1} \\ &\quad - \int (n-1) \cos^{n-2} x \cdot (-\sin x) \cdot \frac{\sin^{m+1} x}{m+1} \, dx \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} \\ &\quad + \frac{n-1}{m+1} \int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx \quad \dots (5) \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1} \\ &\quad \int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x \{1 - \cos^2 x\} \, dx \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1} \int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx \\ &\quad - \frac{n-1}{m+1} \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ &\Rightarrow \left(1 + \frac{n-1}{m+1}\right) I_{m,n} \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1} I_{m,n-2} \\ &\Rightarrow \left(\frac{m+n}{m+1}\right) I_{m,n} \\ &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1} I_{m,n-2} \\ &\Rightarrow I_{m,n} = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+n} + \frac{n-1}{m+n} I_{m,n-2} \quad \dots (6) \end{aligned}$$

Writing  $n + 2$  for  $n$  in (6), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_{m, n+2} &= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+n+2} + \frac{n+1}{m+n+2} I_{m, n} \\
 \Rightarrow \frac{n+1}{m+n+2} I_{m, n} &= -\frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+n+2} + I_{m, n+2} \\
 \Rightarrow I_{m, n} &= -\frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m+n+2}{n+1} I_{m, n+2} \quad \dots (7)
 \end{aligned}$$

(5), (6) and (7) give the required connections.

### Alternative Method

To connect  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x dx$  with any one of the six integrals given below :

- (i)  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x dx$
- (ii)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x dx$
- (iii)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^n x dx$
- (iv)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n+2} x dx$
- (v)  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x dx$
- (vi)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^{n-2} x dx$

We follow the following steps :

**Step I.** Take  $P = \sin^{\lambda+1} x \cos^{\mu+1} x$  where  $\lambda$  is smaller of the two indices of  $\sin x$  and  $\mu$  is smaller of the two indices of  $\cos x$  in the two integrals which are to be connected.

**Step II.** Find  $\frac{dP}{dx}$  and express it as a linear function of the two integrands whose integrals are being connected.

**Step III.** Integrate both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , transpose and solve for the given integral.

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Connect  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx$  with  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let } P = \sin^{(m-2)+1} x \cos^{(n)+1} x$$

$$\Rightarrow P = \sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{dP}{dx} &= (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x \cos x \cdot \cos^{n+1} x \\ &\quad + \sin^{m-1} x \cdot (n+1) \cos^n x (-\sin x) \\ &= (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x - (n+1) \sin^m x \cos^n x \end{aligned}$$

Integrate both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (m-1) \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx - (n+1) \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ &\qquad \qquad \qquad \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow (n+1) \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = -P + (m-1) \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow (n+1) \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = -\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x + (m-1) \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m-1}{n+1} \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx$ .

**Solution :** We shall connect  $\int \sin^4 x \cos^{-2} x \, dx$  with  $\int \sin^2 x \, dx$

$$\text{Let } P = \sin^3 x \cos^{-1} x$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{dP}{dx} &= 3 \sin^2 x + \sin^3 x \cos^{-2} x \sin x \\ &= 3 \sin^2 x + \sin^4 x \cos^{-2} x \end{aligned}$$

Integrate both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$P = 3 \int \sin^2 x \, dx + \int \sin^4 x \cos^{-2} x \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\Rightarrow \int \sin^4 x \cos^{-2} x \, dx \\
 &\quad = P - 3 \int \sin^2 x \, dx \\
 &\Rightarrow \int \frac{\sin^4 x}{\cos^2 x} \, dx = \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x} - \frac{3}{2} \int 2 \sin^2 x \, dx \\
 &\quad = \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x} - \frac{3}{2} \int (1 - \cos 2x) \, dx \\
 &\quad = \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x} - \frac{3}{2} \left( x - \frac{\sin 2x}{2} \right) \\
 &\quad = \frac{\sin^3 x}{\cos x} + \frac{3}{2} \sin x \cos x - \frac{3}{2} x
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 11.2**

1. Connect  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx$  with each of the following :

(i)  $\int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x \, dx$                       (ii)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$

(iii)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^n x \, dx$                       (iv)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx$

(v)  $\int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$

2. Evaluate  $\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x \, dx$

3. Evaluate  $\int \sin^4 x \cos^2 x \, dx$

4. Evaluate  $\int \sin^2 x \cos^6 x \, dx$

5. Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin^5 x \cos^2 x \, dx$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 11.2**

1. (i)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx$

$$= -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+n} + \frac{m-1}{m+n} \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos^n x \, dx$$

(ii)  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx$

$$= \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+n} + \frac{n-1}{m+n} \int \sin^m x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iii)} \quad \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{m+1} + \frac{m+n+2}{m+1} \int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^n x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iv)} \quad \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = -\frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n+1} x}{n+1} + \frac{m+n+2}{n+1} \int \sin^m x \cos^{n+2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(v)} \quad \int \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = \frac{\sin^{m+1} x \cos^{n-1} x}{m+1} + \frac{n-1}{m+1} \int \sin^{m+2} x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \quad \frac{1}{6} \sin^3 x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{8} \sin^3 x \cos x - \frac{1}{16} \sin x \cos x + \frac{x}{16}$$

$$3. \quad -\frac{1}{6} \sin^3 x \cos^3 x - \frac{1}{8} \sin x \cos^3 x + \frac{1}{6} \sin x \cos x + \frac{x}{16}$$

$$4. \quad \frac{1}{8} \left( -\cos^7 x + \frac{1}{6} \cos^5 x + \frac{5}{24} \cos^3 x + \frac{5}{16} \cos x \right) \sin x + \frac{5x}{128}$$

$$5. \quad \frac{128 - 71\sqrt{2}}{1680}$$

11.10 To show that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx = \frac{\left| \frac{m+1}{2} \right| \left| \frac{n+1}{2} \right|}{2 \left| \frac{m+n+2}{2} \right|}$$

where  $m$  and  $n$  are integers.

**Proof**

**Case I.** When  $n = 0$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\ = \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \, dx \\ = \left[ -\frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos x}{m} \right]_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{m-1}{m} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{m-2} x \, dx \\ = \frac{m-1}{m} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{m-2} x \, dx \end{aligned}$$



Now two cases arise

**Case (i)** When  $m$  is even. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{m-1}{m} \cdot \frac{m-3}{m-2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{m-4} \cdots \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{m-1}{m} \cdot \frac{m-3}{m-2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{m-4} \cdots \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \\
 &= \frac{\left\{ \frac{m-1}{2} \cdot \frac{m-3}{2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{2} \cdots \frac{1}{2} \cdot \left[ \frac{1}{2} \right] \right\} \sqrt{\pi}}{\left\{ \frac{m}{2} \cdot \frac{m-2}{2} \cdot \frac{m-4}{2} \cdots \frac{2}{2} \cdot [1] \right\} 2} \\
 &= \frac{\left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right] \sqrt{\pi}}{2 \left[ \frac{m+2}{2} \right]} \quad \left| \begin{array}{l} \because \left[ \frac{1}{2} \right] = \sqrt{\pi} \\ [P+1] = P[P \vee P] \\ [1] = 1 \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \frac{\left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right] \left[ \frac{0+1}{2} \right]}{2 \left[ \frac{m+0+2}{2} \right]} \\
 &= \frac{\left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right] \left[ \frac{n+1}{2} \right]}{2 \left[ \frac{m+n+2}{2} \right]} \quad \text{where } n = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

**Case (ii)** When  $m$  is odd. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{m-1}{m} \cdot \frac{m-3}{m-2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{m-4} \cdots \frac{2}{3} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{m-1}{m} \cdot \frac{m-3}{m-2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{m-4} \cdots \frac{2}{3} \cdot 1 \\
 &= \frac{\frac{m-1}{2} \cdot \frac{m-3}{2} \cdot \frac{m-5}{2} \cdots \frac{2}{2} \sqrt{\pi}}{\frac{m}{2} \cdot \frac{m-2}{2} \cdot \frac{m-4}{2} \cdots \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{2} \right] \cdot 2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{\frac{m+1}{2} \sqrt{\pi}}{\frac{m+2}{2} \cdot 2} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{m+1}{2} \frac{0+1}{2}}{2 \frac{m+0+2}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{m+1}{2} \frac{n+1}{2}}{2 \frac{m+n+2}{2}} \quad \text{when } n = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

**Case II.** When  $m = 0$ . Then exactly as case I,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{\frac{n+1}{2} \frac{0+1}{2}}{2 \frac{n+0+2}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{m+1}{2} \frac{n+1}{2}}{2 \frac{m+n+2}{2}} \quad \text{when } m = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

**Case III.** When  $m$  and  $n$  both are even positive integers. Then let  $m = 2p$ ,  $n = 2q$ ;  $p, q \in I$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p} x \cos^{2q} x \, dx \\
 &= \left[ \frac{\sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q-1} x}{2p+2q} \right]_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{2q-1}{2p+2q} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p} x \cos^{2q-2} x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{2q-1}{2p+2q} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p} x \cos^{2q-2} x \, dx \\
&= \frac{(2q-1)(2q-3)\dots 3 \cdot 1}{(2p+2q)(2p+2q-2)\dots(2p+2)} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p} x \, dx \\
&= \frac{(2q-1)(2q-3)\dots 3 \cdot 1}{(2p+2q)(2p+2q-2)\dots(2p+2)} \cdot \frac{(2p-1)(2p-3)\dots 3 \cdot 1}{2p(2p-2)\dots 4 \cdot 2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \\
&= \frac{\left\{ \frac{2q-1}{2} \cdot \frac{2q-3}{2} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \right\}}{\left\{ \frac{2p-1}{2} \cdot \frac{2p-3}{2} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \right\}} \\
&= \frac{2 \cdot \{(p+q)(p+q-1)\dots 2 \cdot 1\}}{2 \cdot \left\{ \frac{2q+1}{2} \cdot \frac{2p+1}{2} \right\}} \\
&= \frac{\left\{ \frac{m+1}{2} \cdot \frac{n+1}{2} \right\}}{\left\{ \frac{m+n+2}{2} \right\}}
\end{aligned}$$

**Case IV.** When  $m$  is odd and  $n$  is an even integer.

Let  $m = 2p + 1$ ,  $n = 2q$ ;  $p, q \in I$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q} x \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left[ \frac{\sin^{2p+2} x \cos^{2q-1} x}{2p+1+2q} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&\quad + \frac{2q-1}{2p+1+2q} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q-2} x \, dx \\
&= \frac{2q-1}{2p+2q+1} \cdot \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q-2} x \, dx \\
&= \frac{2q-1}{2p+2q+1} \cdot \frac{2q-3}{2p+2q-1} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{3}{2p+5} \cdot \frac{1}{2p+3} \\
&\quad \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \, dx \\
&= \left\{ \frac{2q-1}{2p+2q+1} \cdot \frac{2q-3}{2p+2q-1} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{3}{2p+5} \cdot \frac{1}{2p+3} \right\} \\
&\quad \left\{ \frac{2p}{2p+1} \cdot \frac{2p-2}{2p-1} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{4}{5} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \right\} \\
&= \frac{\left\{ \frac{2q-1}{2} \cdot \frac{2q-3}{2} \cdot \dots \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \right\} \{p(p-1) \dots 2 \cdot 1\}}{\left(p+q+\frac{1}{2}\right) \left(p+q-\frac{1}{2}\right) \dots \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot 2} \\
&= \frac{\frac{2q+1}{2} \overline{p+1}}{2 \overline{p+q+\frac{3}{2}}} \\
&= \frac{\frac{n+1}{2} \overline{\frac{m-1}{2}+1}}{2 \overline{\frac{m-1}{2}+\frac{n}{2}+\frac{3}{2}}} \\
&= \frac{\frac{m+1}{2} \overline{\frac{n+1}{2}}}{2 \overline{\frac{m+n+2}{2}}}
\end{aligned}$$

**Case V.** When  $m$  is even and  $n$  is an odd integer.

Proceed exactly as in case IV.

**Case VI.** When  $m$  and  $n$  both are odd positive integers.

Let  $m = 2p + 1$ ,  $n = 2q + 1$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^m x \cos^n x \, dx &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q+1} x \, dx \\
 &= \left[ \frac{\sin^{2p+2} x \cos^{2q} x}{2p+1+2q+1} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &\quad + \frac{2q}{2p+2q+2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q-1} x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{2q}{2p+2q+2} \cdot \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos^{2q-1} x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{2q}{2p+2q+2} \cdot \frac{2q-2}{2p+2q} \cdot \frac{2q-4}{2p+2q-2} \\
 &\quad \dots \frac{2}{2p+4} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p+1} x \cos x \, dx \\
 &= \frac{2q}{2p+2q+2} \cdot \frac{2q-2}{2p+2q} \dots \frac{2}{2p+4} \cdot \left( \frac{\sin^{2p+2} x}{2p+2} \right)_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &= \frac{2q}{2p+2q+2} \cdot \frac{2q-2}{2p+2q} \dots \frac{2}{2p+4} \cdot \frac{1}{2p+2} \\
 &= \frac{\left\{ \frac{2q}{2} \cdot \frac{2q-2}{2} \dots \frac{2}{2} \right\} \{p(p-1)(p-2) \dots 1\}}{2 \left\{ \frac{2p+2q+2}{2} \cdot \frac{2p+2q}{2} \dots \frac{2p+4}{2} \right\} (p+1) \{p(p-1)(p-2) \dots 1\}} \\
 &= \frac{\{q \cdot (q-1) \dots 1\} \{p(p-1) \dots 1\}}{2 \{(p+q+1)(p+q) \dots 1\}} \\
 &= \frac{\overline{q+1} \overline{p+1}}{2 \overline{p+q+2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{n+1}{2} \cdot \frac{m+1}{2}}{2 \cdot \frac{m+n+2}{2}} \quad \text{Proved}$$

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^6 3\theta \sin^2 6\theta \, d\theta$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^6 3\theta \sin^2 6\theta \, d\theta & \text{Put } 3\theta &= t \\ & & \text{so that } 3d\theta &= dt \\ & & \Rightarrow d\theta &= \frac{dt}{3} \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^6 3\theta (2 \sin 3\theta \cos 3\theta)^2 \, d\theta \\ &= 4 \int_0^{\pi/6} \sin^2 3\theta \cos^4 3\theta \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 t \cos^4 t \, dt \\ &= \frac{4 \cdot \frac{2+1}{2} \cdot \frac{8+1}{2}}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{2+8+2}{2}} = \frac{2 \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{9}{2}}{3 \cdot 6} \\ &= \frac{2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{7}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{3 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} \\ &= \frac{105 \pi}{3 \cdot 16 \times 120} = \frac{7 \pi}{3 \cdot 128} = \frac{7 \pi}{384} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Prove that  $\int_0^1 x^{1/2} (1-x)^{1/2} \, dx = \frac{3\pi}{128}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^1 x^{1/2} (1-x)^{1/2} \, dx & \text{Put } x &= \sin^2 \theta \\ & & \therefore dx &= 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^1 \theta \cos^1 \theta \cdot 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 \theta \cos^4 \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2 \left| \frac{4+1}{2} \right| \left| \frac{4+1}{2} \right|}{2 \left| \frac{4+4+2}{2} \right|} \\
 &= \frac{\left| \frac{5}{2} \right| \left| \frac{5}{2} \right|}{\left| 5 \right|} \\
 &= \frac{\frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} \\
 &= \frac{3\pi}{128}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{2a} x^3 (2ax - x^2)^{3/2} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_0^{2a} x^3 (2ax - x^2)^{3/2} dx \\
 &= \int_0^{2a} x^{3/2} (2a - x)^{3/2} dx \\
 &\quad \text{Put } x = 2a \sin^2 \theta \\
 &\quad \therefore dx = 4a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} (2a)^{3/2} \sin^3 \theta (2a)^{3/2} \cos^3 \theta \cdot 4a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= (2a)^6 \cdot 4a \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{10} \theta \cos^4 \theta d\theta \\
 &= 256 a^7 \frac{\left| \frac{11}{2} \right| \left| \frac{5}{2} \right|}{2 \left| 8 \right|} \\
 &= 128 a^7 \frac{\frac{9}{2} \cdot \frac{7}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} \\
 &= \frac{9\pi a^7}{16}
 \end{aligned}$$

## EXERCISE 11.3

Evaluate :

1.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 \theta \cos^2 \theta \, d\theta$

2.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 \theta \cos^4 \theta \, d\theta$

3.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 \theta \cos^2 \theta \, d\theta$

4.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^5 \theta \cos^4 \theta \, d\theta$

5.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 \theta \cos^6 \theta \, d\theta$

6.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 \theta \cos^8 \theta \, d\theta$

7.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^3 \theta \cos^3 \theta \, d\theta$

8.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 x (1 + \cos x)^3 \, dx$

9.  $\int_0^{\pi} \sin^4 x (1 + \cos x)^3 \, dx$

10.  $\int_0^{\pi/6} \cos^4 3\phi \sin^2 6\phi \, d\phi$

11.  $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sin^n(2x) \, dx$

12.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n} x \, dx$

13.  $\int_0^1 x^2 (1 - x^2)^{3/2} \, dx$

14.  $\int_0^1 x^6 (1 - x^2)^{1/2} \, dx$

15.  $\int_0^1 x^4 (1 - x^2)^{3/2} \, dx$

16.  $\int_0^1 x^{3/2} \sqrt{1-x} \, dx$

17.  $\int_0^a x^2 (ax - x^2)^{1/2} \, dx$

18.  $\int_0^a x^4 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \, dx$

19.  $\int_0^a \frac{x^4}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \, dx$

20.  $\int_0^a \frac{x^4 \, dx}{(a^2 + x^2)^4}$

21.  $\int_0^a \frac{x^4 \, dx}{(a^2 + x^2)^4}$

22.  $\int_0^{2a} x^3 \sqrt{2ax - x^2} \, dx$

23.  $\int_0^{2a} x^{3/2} (2a - x)^{-1/2} \, dx$

24.  $\int_0^a x^3 (2ax - x^2)^{3/2} \, dx$

25.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^3 4x \, dx$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 11.3

1.  $\frac{\pi}{32}$

2.  $\frac{\pi}{32}$



3.  $\frac{8}{105}$

4.  $\frac{8}{315}$

5.  $\frac{8}{693}$

6.  $\frac{8}{1287}$

7.  $\frac{1}{12}$

8.  $\frac{7\pi}{8}$

9.  $\frac{9\pi}{16}$

10.  $\frac{5\pi}{192}$

11.  $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4} \cdot \frac{\frac{n+1}{2}}{\frac{n+2}{2}}$

12.  $\frac{2n-1}{2n} \cdot \frac{2n-3}{2n-2} \cdots \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$

13.  $\frac{\pi}{32}$

14.  $\frac{5\pi}{256}$

15.  $\frac{3\pi}{512}$

16.  $\frac{\pi}{16}$

17.  $\frac{5\pi a^4}{128}$

18.  $\frac{\pi a^6}{32}$

19.  $\frac{3\pi a^4}{16}$

20.  $\frac{\pi}{32a^3}$

21.  $\frac{1}{16} \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{1}{3} \right) \frac{1}{a^3}$

22.  $\frac{7\pi a^5}{8}$

23.  $\frac{63}{8} \pi a^5$

24.  $\left( \frac{9\pi}{32} - \frac{23}{35} \right) a^7$

25.  $\frac{1}{6}$

11.11 Reduction formula for  $\int x^n \sin mx \, dx$ 

$$I = \int x^n \sin mx \, dx$$

I II

Taking  $x^n$  as the first function and  $\sin mx$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= x^n \left( \frac{-\cos mx}{m} \right) - \int nx^{n-1} \left( \frac{-\cos mx}{m} \right) dx \\
 &= \frac{-x^n \cos mx}{m} + \frac{n}{m} \int x^{n-1} \cos mx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Again taking  $x^{n-1}$  as the first function and  $\cos mx$  as the second function and integrating by parts,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{-x^n \cos mx}{m} + \frac{n}{m} \left[ x^{n-1} \frac{\sin mx}{m} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \int (n-1)x^{n-2} \cdot \frac{\sin mx}{m} dx \right] \\
 &= \frac{-x^n \cos mx}{m} + \frac{n}{m^2} x^{n-1} \sin mx \\
 &\quad - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} \int x^{n-2} \sin mx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.12 Reduction formula for $\int x^n \cos mx \, dx$

Proceeding exactly as in art. 11.11, we can get the required reduction formula as follows :

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int x^n \cos mx \, dx &= \frac{x^n \sin mx}{m} + \frac{nx^{n-1} \cos mx}{m^2} \\
 &\quad - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} \int x^{n-2} \cos mx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

### 11.13 Reduction formula for $\int x \sin^n x \, dx$

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int x \sin^n x \, dx \\
 &= \int \frac{(x \sin^{n-1} x) \sin x}{I} \frac{II}{II} \, dx \\
 &= x \sin^{n-1} x (-\cos x) - \int \{ \sin^{n-1} x \\
 &\quad + x \cdot (n-1) \sin^{n-2} x \cdot \cos x \} (-\cos x) dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -x \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \int \sin^{n-1} x \cos x \, dx \\
&\quad + (n-1) \int x \sin^{n-2} x \cos^2 x \, dx \\
&= -x \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{\sin^n x}{n} + (n-1) \\
&\quad \int x \sin^{n-2} x \cdot (1 - \sin^2 x) \, dx \\
&= -x \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{\sin^n x}{n} + (n-1) \\
&\quad \int x \sin^{n-2} x \, dx - (n-1) \int x \sin^n x \, dx \\
&\Rightarrow (1+n-1) \int x \sin^n x \, dx \\
&\quad = -x \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{\sin^n x}{n} + (n-1) \int x \sin^{n-2} x \, dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x \sin^n x \, dx \\
&\quad = \frac{-x \sin^{n-1} x \cos x + \frac{\sin^n x}{n}}{n} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int x \sin^{n-2} x \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

#### 11.14 Reduction formula for $\int x \cos^n x \, dx$

Proceeding exactly as in art. 11.13, we can get the required reduction formula as follows :

$$\int x \cos^n x \, dx = \frac{x \cos^{n-1} x \sin x}{n} + \frac{\cos^n x}{n^2} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int x \cos^{n-2} x \, dx$$

#### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** If  $u_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} x^n \sin mx \, dx$ , then prove that

$$u_n = \frac{n}{m^2} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right)^{n-1} - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} u_{n-2}$$

where  $m$  is of the form  $4r+1$ .

**Solution :**

We know that

$$\int x^n \sin mx \, dx = -\frac{x^n \cos mx}{m} + \frac{nx^{n-1} \sin mx}{m^2} - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} \int x^{n-2} \sin mx \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow \int_0^{\pi/2} x^n \sin mx \, dx &= \left[ -\frac{x^n \cos mx}{m} \right]_0^{\pi/2} + \left[ \frac{nx^{n-1} \sin mx}{m^2} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\ &\quad - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} \int_0^{\pi/2} x^{n-2} \sin mx \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow u_n &= -\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^n \frac{1}{m} \cos\left(m \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + n\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^{n-1} \frac{1}{m^2} \sin \frac{m\pi}{2} \\ &\quad - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} u_{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } \cos \frac{m\pi}{2} &= \cos \left\{ (4r+1) \frac{\pi}{2} \right\} \\ &= \cos \left( 2r\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\ &= \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } \sin \frac{m\pi}{2} &= \sin \left\{ (4r+1) \frac{\pi}{2} \right\} \\ &= \sin \left( 2r\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\ &= \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$u_n = \frac{n}{m^2} \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^{n-1} - \frac{n(n-1)}{m^2} u_{n-2}$$

**Example 2.** If  $u_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta \sin^n \theta \, d\theta$  and  $n > 1$ , then prove that

$$u_n = \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{n-1}{n} u_{n-2}$$

Hence deduce that  $u_5 = \frac{149}{225}$

**Solution :**

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \int \theta \sin^n \theta \, d\theta &= -\frac{\theta \sin^{n-1} \theta \cos \theta}{n} + \frac{\sin^n \theta}{n^2} \\ &\quad + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \theta \sin^{n-2} \theta \, d\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta \sin^n \theta \, d\theta &= \left( -\frac{\theta \sin^{n-1} \theta \cos \theta}{n} \right)_0^{\pi/2} + \left( \frac{\sin^n \theta}{n^2} \right)_0^{\pi/2} \\ &\quad + \frac{n-1}{n} \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta \sin^{n-2} \theta \, d\theta \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow u_n = \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{n-1}{n} u_{n-2} \quad \text{Proved}$$

Put  $n = 5$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore u_5 &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{5} u_3 \\ &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{5} \left[ \frac{1}{9} + \frac{2}{3} u_1 \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{45} + \frac{8}{15} u_1 \\ &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{45} + \frac{8}{15} \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta \sin \theta \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{45} + \frac{8}{15} \left[ \left\{ \theta (-\cos \theta) \right\}_0^{\pi/2} - \int_0^{\pi/2} 1 \cdot (-\cos \theta) \, d\theta \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{45} + \frac{8}{15} [\sin \theta]_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{25} + \frac{4}{45} + \frac{8}{15} \\
 &= \frac{9 + 20 + 120}{225} \\
 &= \frac{149}{225}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 11.4**

Evaluate :

1.  $\int x^2 \sin 2x \, dx$
2.  $\int x^2 \cos 2x \, dx$
3.  $\int x \sin^2 x \, dx$
4.  $\int x \sin^3 x \, dx$
5.  $\int x \cos^5 x \, dx$
6.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} x^2 \sin 3x \, dx$
7.  $\int_0^{\pi} \theta \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta$
8. If  $u_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} x^n \sin x \, dx$ , and  $n > 1$ , prove that

$$u_n + n(n-1)u_{n-2} = n\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^{n-1}$$

Hence evaluate

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} x^3 \sin x \, dx$$

9. If  $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/2} x^n \sin(2p+1)x \, dx$ , then prove that

$$I_n + \frac{n(n-1)I_{n-2}}{(2p+1)^2} = (-1)^p \frac{n}{(2p+1)^2} \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^{n-1}$$

where  $n$  and  $p$  are positive integers. Hence evaluate

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} x^4 \sin 3x \, dx$$

10. Prove that  $\int_0^a \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \left\{ \cos^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \right\}^2 dx = \frac{\pi a^2}{8} \left( \frac{\pi^2}{6} + 1 \right)$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 11.4

1.  $\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}x^2\right)\cos 2x + \frac{1}{2}x\sin 2x$
2.  $\frac{1}{2}x^2\sin 2x + \frac{1}{2}x\cos 2x - \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x$
3.  $\frac{1}{4}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x\sin 2x - \frac{1}{8}\cos 2x$
4.  $-\frac{x\sin^2 x \cos x}{3} + \frac{1}{9}\sin^3 x + \frac{2}{3}(\sin x - x\cos x)$
5.  $I_3 = \frac{1}{5}\left(x\sin x \cos^4 x + \frac{1}{5}\cos^5 x + 4I_1\right) = \text{etc.}$
6.  $\frac{2}{27} - \frac{\pi^2}{12}$
7.  $-\frac{4}{9}$
8.  $5\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^4 - 60\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 + 120$

11.15 Reduction formula for  $\int e^{ax} \sin^n bx \, dx$ 

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int e^{ax} \sin^n bx \, dx \\
 &= \sin^n bx \frac{e^{ax}}{a} - \int n \sin^{n-1} bx \cdot \cos bx \cdot b \frac{e^{ax}}{a} \, dx \\
 &= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a} \int (\sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx) e^{ax} \, dx \\
 &= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a} \left[ \frac{\sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx e^{ax}}{a} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \int \{(n-1) \sin^{n-2} bx \cdot \cos^2 bx \cdot b \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \sin^{n-1} bx \cdot \sin bx \cdot b\} \cdot \frac{e^{ax}}{a} \, dx \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx + \frac{nb^2}{a^2} \\
&\quad \int \{(n-1) \sin^{n-2} bx \cos^2 bx - \sin^n bx\} e^{ax} dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx + \frac{nb^2}{a^2} \\
&\quad \int \{(n-1) \sin^{n-2} bx (1 - \sin^2 bx) - \sin^n bx\} e^{ax} dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx + \frac{nb^2}{a^2} \\
&\quad \int \{(n-1) \sin^{n-2} bx - (n-1) \sin^n bx - \sin^n bx\} e^{ax} dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx + \frac{nb^2}{a^2} \\
&\quad \int \{(n-1) \sin^{n-2} bx - n \sin^n bx\} e^{ax} dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx + \frac{n(n-1)b^2}{a^2} \\
&\quad \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2} bx dx - \frac{n^2 b^2}{a^2} \int e^{ax} \sin^n bx dx \\
&\Rightarrow \left(1 + \frac{n^2 b^2}{a^2}\right) \int e^{ax} \sin^n bx dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx \\
&\quad + \frac{n(n-1)b^2}{a^2} \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2} bx dx \\
&\Rightarrow \left(\frac{a^2 + n^2 b^2}{a^2}\right) \int e^{ax} \sin^n bx dx \\
&= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^n bx}{a} - \frac{nb}{a^2} e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \cos bx \\
&\quad + \frac{n(n-1)b^2}{a^2} \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2} bx dx
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 \Rightarrow \int e^{ax} \sin^n bx \, dx &= \frac{e^{ax} \sin^{n-1} bx \{a \sin bx - nb \cos bx\}}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \\
 &\quad + \frac{n(n-1)b^2}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2} bx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula. Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int e^{ax} \cos^n bx \, dx &= \frac{e^{ax} \cos^{n-1} bx \{a \cos bx + nb \sin bx\}}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \\
 &\quad + \frac{n(n-1)b^2}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} \int e^{ax} \cos^{n-2} bx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

### 11.16 Reduction formula for $\int x^n e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx$

We know that

$$\int e^{ax} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \sin (bx - \alpha)$$

$$\text{where } \alpha = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \int x^n (e^{ax} \sin bx) \, dx &= \int x^n \frac{e^{ax}}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \sin (bx - \alpha) \, dx \\
 &= \frac{x^n e^{ax}}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \sin (bx - \alpha) \\
 &\quad - \int \frac{n x^{n-1} e^{ax} \sin (bx - \alpha)}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \, dx \\
 &= \frac{x^n e^{ax} \sin (bx - \alpha)}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} - \frac{n}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \int x^{n-1} e^{ax} \sin (bx - \alpha) \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula. Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int x^n (e^{ax} \cos bx) \, dx &= \frac{x^n e^{ax} \cos (bx - \alpha)}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} - \frac{n}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \int x^{n-1} e^{ax} \cos (bx - \alpha) \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Integrating by parts twice, or otherwise, obtain a reduction formula for

$$I_m = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^m x \, dx$$

where  $m \geq 2$  in the form

$$(1 + m^2) I_m = m(m-1) I_{m-2}$$

Hence evaluate  $I_4$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} I_m &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^m x \, dx \\ &= \left[ \sin^m x (-e^{-x}) \right]_0^{\infty} - \int_0^{\infty} m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x (-e^{-x}) \, dx \\ &= m \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \, dx \\ &= m \left[ \left\{ \sin^{m-1} x \cos x (-e^{-x}) \right\}_0^{\infty} \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \int_0^{\infty} \{ (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x \cos x \cdot \cos x \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \sin^{m-1} x (-\sin x) \} (-e^{-x}) \, dx \right] \\ &= m \int_0^{\infty} \{ (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x (1 - \sin^2 x) - \sin^m x \} e^{-x} \, dx \\ &= m \int_0^{\infty} \{ (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x - (m-1) \sin^m x - \sin^m x \} e^{-x} \, dx \\ &= m \int_0^{\infty} \{ (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x - m \sin^m x \} e^{-x} \, dx \\ &= m(m-1) \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^{m-2} x \, dx - m^2 \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^m x \, dx \\ &\Rightarrow (1 + m^2) \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^m x \, dx \\ &= m(m-1) \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \sin^{m-2} x \, dx \\ &\Rightarrow (1 + m^2) I_m = m(m-1) I_{m-2} \end{aligned}$$

Put  $m = 4$

$$17 I_4 = 12 I_2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow I_4 &= \frac{12}{17} I_2 \\ &= \frac{12}{17} \left[ \frac{2}{5} I_0 \right] \\ &= \frac{24}{85} I_0 \\ &= \frac{24}{85} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} dx \\ &= \frac{24}{85}\end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 11.5

Integrate :

1.  $e^{2x} \cos^3 x$
2.  $e^{\pi x} \sin^3 x$
3.  $x^2 e^{3x} \sin 4x$
4.  $e^x (x \cos x + \sin x)$
5.  $e^{\pi x} \cos^4 x$
6.  $x^3 e^x \sin x$
7.  $\int_0^{\infty} x e^{-2x} \cos 2x dx$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 11.5

1.  $\frac{1}{4} e^{2x} \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{13}} \cos \left( 3x - \tan^{-1} \frac{3}{2} \right) + \frac{3}{\sqrt{5}} \cos \left( x - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2} \right) \right\}$
2.  $\frac{1}{4} e^{\pi x} \left\{ \frac{3}{\sqrt{1+a^2}} \sin \left( x - \cot^{-1} a \right) - \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+9}} \sin \left( 3x - \cot^{-1} \frac{a}{3} \right) \right\}$

$$3. \frac{1}{5} \left[ x^2 e^{3x} \sin \left( 4x - \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3} \right) - \frac{2}{5} x e^{3x} \sin \left( 4x - 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3} \right) \right] \\ + \frac{2}{25} \cdot \frac{1}{5} \cdot e^{3x} \sin \left( 4x - 3 \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3} \right)$$

$$4. \frac{1}{2} e^x \{ x (\cos x + \sin x) - \cos x \}$$

$$5. \frac{e^{ax} \cos^3 x (a \cos x + 4 \sin x)}{a^2 + 16} + \frac{12 (a \cos x + 2 \sin x) \cos x e^{ax}}{(a^2 + 16)(a^2 + 4)} \\ + \frac{24 e^{ax}}{(a^2 + 16)(a^2 + 4) a}$$

$$6. x^3 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} e^x \sin \left( x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) - \frac{3x^2}{2} e^x \sin \left( x - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \\ + 6x 2^{-3/2} e^x \sin \left( x - 3 \frac{\pi}{4} \right) - 6 2^{-2} e^x \sin (x - \pi)$$

$$7. \frac{3}{25}$$

### 11.17 Reduction formula for $\int \sin^m x \sin nx \, dx$

$$I = \int \sin^m x \sin nx \, dx \\ \text{I} \quad \text{II} \\ = \sin^m x \left( -\frac{\cos nx}{n} \right) \\ - \int m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \left( -\frac{\cos nx}{n} \right) dx \\ = -\frac{\sin^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m}{n} \int (\sin^{m-1} x \cos x) \cos nx \, dx \\ \text{I} \quad \text{II} \\ = -\frac{\sin^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m}{n} \left[ \frac{\sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx}{n} \right. \\ \left. - \int \{ (m-1) \sin^{m-2} x \cos^2 x - \sin^m x \} \frac{\sin nx}{n} dx \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{\sin^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx}{n^2} \\
&\quad - \frac{m}{n^2} \int \{(m-1) \sin^{m-2} x (1 - \sin^2 x) - \sin^m x\} \sin nx \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\sin^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx}{n^2} \\
&\quad - \frac{m}{n^2} \int \{(m-1) \sin^{m-2} x - m \sin^m x\} \sin nx \, dx \\
&= -\frac{\sin^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx}{n^2} \\
&\quad - \frac{m}{n^2} (m-1) \int \sin^{m-2} x \sin nx \, dx + \frac{m^2}{n^2} \int \sin^m x \cdot \sin nx \, dx \\
&\Rightarrow \left(1 - \frac{m^2}{n^2}\right) \int \sin^m x \sin nx \, dx \\
&\quad = \frac{m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx - n \sin^m x \cos nx}{n^2} \\
&\quad \quad - \frac{m(m-1)}{n^2} \int \sin^{m-2} x \sin nx \, dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int \sin^m x \sin nx \, dx \\
&\quad = \frac{n \sin^m x \cos nx - m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \sin nx}{m^2 - n^2} \\
&\quad \quad + \frac{m(m-1)}{m^2 - n^2} \int \sin^{m-2} x \sin nx \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula. Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int \sin^m x \cos nx \, dx \\
&= -\frac{n \sin^m x \sin nx + m \sin^{m-1} x \cos x \cos nx}{m^2 - n^2} \\
&\quad + \frac{m(m-1)}{m^2 - n^2} \int \sin^{m-2} x \cos nx \, dx
\end{aligned}$$

11.18 Reduction formula for  $\int \cos^m x \sin nx \, dx$ 

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int \cos^m x \sin nx \, dx \\
 &= \cos^m x \left( -\frac{\cos nx}{n} \right) \\
 &\quad - \int m \cos^{m-1} x (1 - \sin x) \left( -\frac{\cos nx}{n} \right) dx \\
 &= -\frac{\cos^m x \cos nx}{n} - \frac{m}{n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \sin x \cos nx \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Now,

$$\sin (n-1)x = \sin nx \cos x - \cos nx \sin x$$

$$\Rightarrow \sin x \cos nx$$

$$= \sin nx \cos x - \sin (n-1)x$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I &= -\frac{\cos^m x \cos nx}{n} - \frac{m}{n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \{ \sin nx \cos x - \sin (n-1)x \} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Rightarrow I &= -\frac{\cos^m x \cos nx}{n} - \frac{m}{n} \int \cos^m x \sin nx \, dx \\
 &\quad + \frac{m}{n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \sin (n-1)x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow I \left\{ 1 + \frac{m}{n} \right\} = -\frac{\cos^m x \cos nx}{n} + \frac{m}{n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \sin (n-1)x \, dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Rightarrow \int \cos^m x \sin nx \, dx \\
 &= -\frac{\cos^m x \cos nx}{m+n} + \frac{m}{m+n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \sin (n-1)x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \int \cos^m x \cos nx \, dx \\ = \frac{\cos^m x \sin nx}{m+n} + \frac{m}{m+n} \int \cos^{m-1} x \sin (n-1) x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m x \sin mx \, dx = \frac{1}{2^{m+1}} \left\{ 2 + \frac{2^1}{2} + \frac{2^1}{3} + \dots + \frac{2^m}{m} \right\}$$

**Solution :**

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m x \sin mx \, dx \\ = \left[ -\frac{\cos^m x \cos mx}{m+m} \right]_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{m}{m+m} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{m-1} x \sin (m-1) x \, dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow I_{m,m} = \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2} I_{m-1,m-1}$$

Put  $m-1$  for  $m$ ,

$$I_{m-1,m-1} = \frac{1}{2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2} I_{m-2,m-2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I_{m,m} &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2} I_{m-2,m-2} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^2} I_{m-2,m-2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-2)} + \frac{1}{2^3} I_{m-3,m-3} \\ &\quad \left| \text{Proceeding similarly} \right. \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^3(m-2)} + \dots \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{1}{2^m \{m-(m-1)\}} + \frac{1}{2^m} I_{m-m,m-m} \right. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^3(m-2)} + \dots \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2^m \cdot 1} + \frac{1}{2^m} I_{0,n} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^3(m-2)} + \dots \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2^m \cdot 1} + \frac{1}{2^m} \int_0^{\pi/2} o \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now } \int_0^{\pi/2} o \, dx = [c]_0^{\pi/2} = c - c = 0$$

$$\therefore I_{m,n} = \frac{1}{2m} + \frac{1}{2^2(m-1)} + \frac{1}{2^3(m-2)} + \dots + \frac{1}{2^m \cdot 1}$$

Writing the series in the reverse order

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2^m \cdot 1} + \frac{1}{2^{m-1} \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2^{m-2} \cdot 3} + \dots + \frac{1}{2m} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^{m+1}} \left[ \frac{2^{m+1}}{2^m \cdot 1} + \frac{2^{m+1}}{2^{m-1} \cdot 2} + \frac{2^{m+1}}{2^{m-2} \cdot 3} + \dots + \frac{2^{m+1}}{2m} \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^{m+1}} \left[ \frac{2}{1} + \frac{2^2}{2} + \frac{2^3}{3} + \dots + \frac{2^m}{m} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \cos nx \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2^{n+1}}.$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_{m,n} &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x \cos nx \, dx \\
 &= \left( \frac{\cos^n x \sin nx}{n+n} \right)_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{n}{n+n} I_{n-1,n-1} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} I_{n-1,n-1} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} I_{n-2,n-2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^2} I_{n-2,n-2}
 \end{aligned}$$



Proceeding in this manner

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2^n} I_{n-n, n-n} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^n} I_{0,0} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^n} \int_0^{\pi/2} 1 \cdot dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^n} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2^{n+1}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Prove that  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \sin nx \, dx = \frac{1}{n-1}$ ;  $n$  being an integer greater than unity.

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \sin nx \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \sin \{(n-1)x + x\} \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \{ \sin(n-1)x \cos x \\
 &\quad + \cos(n-1)x \sin x \} \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-1} x \sin(n-1)x \, dx \\
 &\quad + \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \cos(n-1)x \sin x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Integrating the first integral only by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left\{ \cos^{n-1} x - \frac{\cos(n-1)x}{n-1} \right\}_0^{\pi/2} \\
 &\quad - \int_0^{\pi/2} (n-1) \cos^{n-2} x (-\sin x) \cdot \left\{ -\frac{\cos(n-1)x}{n-1} \right\} \, dx \\
 &\quad + \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \cos(n-1)x \sin x \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{n-1} - \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \cos(n-1)x \sin x \, dx \\
&\quad + \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{n-2} x \cos(n-1)x \sin x \, dx \\
&= \frac{1}{n-1}
\end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 11.6**

1. Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m x \sin nx \, dx = \frac{1}{m+n} + \frac{m}{m+n} \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^{m-1} x \cdot \sin(n-1)x \, dx$$

Hence evaluate

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^5 x \sin 3x \, dx$$

2. If
- $I_{m,n} = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m x \cos nx \, dx$
- , then prove that

$$I_{m,n} = \frac{m(m-1)}{m^2 - n^2} I_{m-2,n}$$

3. If
- $f(m,n) = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^m x \cos nx \, dx$
- , then prove that

$$f(m,n) = \frac{m}{m-n} f(m-1, n+1) = \frac{m}{m+n} f(m-1, n-1)$$

4. Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi} \sin^m x \sin nx \, dx = \frac{m(m-1)}{m^2 - n^2} \int_0^{\pi} \sin^{m-2} x \sin nx \, dx$$

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 11.6**

- 1.
- $\frac{1}{3}$

### 11.19 Reduction formula for $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$

The integral  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$  can be connected with any one of the following six integrals :

- (i)  $\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx$
- (ii)  $\int x^{m+n} (a + bx^n)^p dx$
- (iii)  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx$
- (iv)  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx$
- (v)  $\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx$
- (vi)  $\int x^{m+n} (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx$

#### Proofs

$$I = \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p \quad \dots (1)$$

$$= \int x^{m-n+1} \left\{ \underbrace{(a + bx^n)^p}_{\text{II}} \cdot \underbrace{x^{n-1}}_{\text{I}} \right\} dx$$

$$= x^{m-n+1} \frac{(a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb}$$

$$- \int (m-n+1) x^{m-n} \frac{(a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} dx \quad \dots (2)$$

$$= \frac{x^{m-n+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{m-n+1}{nb(p+1)}$$

$$\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n) (a + bx^n)^p dx$$

$$= \frac{x^{m-n+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{a(m-n+1)}{nb(p+1)}$$

$$\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx - \frac{m-n+1}{n(p+1)}$$

$$\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow \left\{ 1 + \frac{m-n+1}{n(p+1)} \right\} I \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m-n+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{nb(p+1)} \\
&\quad \quad - \frac{a(m-n+1)}{nb(p+1)} \int x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m-n+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{b(np+m+1)} \\
&\quad \quad - \frac{a(m-n+1)}{b(np+m+1)} \int x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \quad \dots (3)
\end{aligned}$$

Writing  $m+n$  for  $m$  in (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int x^{m+n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{m+1}{(p+1)nb} \int x^m(a+bx^n)^{p+1} dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{m+1}{(p+1)nb} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^m(a+bx^n)(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{(m+1)a}{(p+1)nb} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx - \frac{(m+1)}{(p+1)n} \int x^{m+n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\Rightarrow \frac{(m+1)a}{(p+1)nb} \int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} \\
&\quad \quad - \int x^{m+n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \cdot \left\{ 1 + \frac{m+1}{(p+1)n} \right\}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow \frac{(m+1)a}{(p+1)nb} \int x^m (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} \\
&\quad \quad - \frac{np+n+m+1}{(p+1)n} \int x^{m+n} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x^m (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(m+1)a} - \frac{(np+n+m+1)b}{(m+1)a} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^{m+n} (a+bx^n)^p dx \quad \dots (4)
\end{aligned}$$

Again  $I = \int x^m (a+bx^n)^p dx$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (a+bx^n)^p \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} \\
&\quad - \int p(a+bx^n)^{p-1} bn x^n \cdot \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} dx \\
&= \frac{(a+bx^n)^p x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \frac{pbn}{m+1} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^{m+n} (a+bx^n)^{p-1} dx \quad \dots (5) \\
&= \frac{(a+bx^n)^p x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \frac{pn}{m+1} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^m - bx^n \cdot (a+bx^n)^{p-1} dx \\
&= \frac{(a+bx^n)^p x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \frac{pn}{m+1} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^m (a+bx^n - a) (a+bx^n)^{p-1} dx \\
&= \frac{(a+bx^n)^p x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \frac{pn}{m+1} \int x^m (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad \quad + \frac{pna}{m+1} \int x^m (a+bx^n)^{p-1} dx
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow \left(1 + \frac{pn}{m+1}\right) \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1} (a + bx^n)^p}{m+1} + \frac{anp}{m+1} \int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1} (a + bx^n)^p}{np + m + 1} + \frac{anp}{np + m + 1} \int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx \quad \dots (6)
\end{aligned}$$

Writing  $p + 1$  for  $p$  in (6), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{np + m + n + 1} + \frac{an(p+1)}{np + n + m + 1} \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
&\Rightarrow \frac{an(p+1)}{np + n + m + 1} \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = -\frac{x^{m+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{np + m + n + 1} + \int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = -\frac{x^{m+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{an(p+1)} + \frac{np + n + m + 1}{an(p+1)} \int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx \quad \dots (7)
\end{aligned}$$

Equations (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (7) respectively give the connections of  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$  with the integrals (v), (i), (ii), (vi), (iii) and (iv).

### Alternative Method

The integral  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$  can be connected with any one of the following six integrals :

- (i)  $\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx$
- (ii)  $\int x^{m+n} (a + bx^n)^p dx$
- (iii)  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx$
- (iv)  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx$
- (v)  $\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx$
- (vi)  $\int x^{m+n} (a + bx^n)^{p-1} dx$

according to the following rule whose steps are given below :

**Step 1.** Let  $P = x^{\lambda+1} (a + bx^n)^{\mu+1}$

where  $\lambda$  is the smaller of the two indices of  $x$  and  $\mu$  is the smaller of the two indices of  $(a + bx^n)$  in the two integrals which are to be connected.

**Step 2.** Find  $\frac{dP}{dx}$  and express it as a linear function of the two integrands whose integrals are to be connected.

**Step 3.** Integrate both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , transpose and solve for the given integral.

**Example 1.** Connect  $\int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx$  with  $\int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $P = x^{(m-n)+1} (a + bx^n)^{(p+1)}$

Then 
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dP}{dx} &= x^{m-n+1} \cdot (p+1) (a + bx^n)^p \cdot bnx^{n-1} \\ &\quad + (m-n+1) x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} \\ &= (p+1) nb x^m (a + bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + (m-n+1) x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} \end{aligned}$$

Integrate both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (p+1) nb \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\ &\quad + (m-n+1) \int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} dx \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow x^{m-n+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} \\
&\quad = (p+1)nb \int x^n (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad \quad + (m-n+1) \int x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} dx \\
&\Rightarrow (p+1)nb \int x^n (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = x^{m-n+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} - (m-n+1) \\
&\quad \quad \int x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} dx \\
&\Rightarrow \int x^n (a+bx^n)^p dx \\
&\quad = \frac{x^{m-n+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{m-n+1}{(p+1)nb} \\
&\quad \quad \int x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} dx
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Connect  $\int x^n (a+bx^n)^p dx$  with  $\int x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^p dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $P = x^{m-n+1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}$

Differentiating w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dP}{dx} &= (m-n+1) x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} \\
&\quad + x^{m-n+1} (p+1) (a+bx^n)^p bnx^{n-1} \\
&= (m-n+1) x^{m-n} (a+bx^n) (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + (p+1) nb x^m (a+bx^n)^p \\
&= (m-n+1) a x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + (m-n+1) bx^m (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + (p+1) nb x^m (a+bx^n)^p \\
&= (m-n+1) ax^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + \{(m-n+1)b + (p+1)nb\} x^m (a+bx^n)^p \\
&= (m-n+1) ax^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + b(m-n+1+np+n) x^m (a+bx^n)^p \\
&= (m-n+1) ax^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^p \\
&\quad + b(m+np+1) x^m (a+bx^n)^p
\end{aligned}$$



Integrating both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 P &= (m - n + 1) a \int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 &\quad + b (m + np + 1) \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 \Rightarrow x^{m-n+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} \\
 &= (m - n + 1) a \int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 &\quad + b (m + np + 1) \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 \Rightarrow b (m + np + 1) \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 &= x^{m-n+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1} - (m - n + 1) a \int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 \Rightarrow \int x^m (a + bx^n)^p dx \\
 &= \frac{x^{m-n+1} (a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{b (m + np + 1)} - \frac{a (m - n + 1)}{b (m + np + 1)} \int x^{m-n} (a + bx^n)^p dx
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** If  $I_n = \int_0^1 x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx$  where  $p, q$  and  $n$  are positive, prove that  $(nq + p + 1) I_n = nq I_{n-1}$ . Evaluate  $I_n$  when  $n$  is a +ve integer.

**Solution :**

Let  $P = x^{p+1} (1 - x^q)^{n-1+1} = x^{p+1} (1 - x^q)^n$

Differentiating we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{dP}{dx} &= (p + 1) x^p (1 - x^q)^n \\
 &\quad + x^{p+1} n (1 - x^q)^{n-1} (-qx^{q-1}) \\
 &= (p + 1) x^p (1 - x^q)^n - nq x^{p+q} (1 - x^q)^{n-1} \\
 &= (p + 1) x^p (1 - x^q)^n \\
 &\quad + nq x^p (1 - x^q - 1) (1 - x^q)^{n-1} \\
 &= (p + 1) x^p (1 - x^q)^n \\
 &\quad + nq x^p (1 - x^q)^n - nq x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} \\
 &= (nq + p + 1) x^p (1 - x^q)^n - nq x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1}
 \end{aligned}$$

Integrating both sides w.r.t.  $x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 P &= (nq + p + 1) \int x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx \\
 &\quad - nq \int x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} dx \\
 \Rightarrow (nq + p + 1) \int x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx \\
 &\quad = P + nq \int x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} dx \\
 \Rightarrow (nq + p + 1) \int x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx \\
 &\quad = x^{p+1} (1 - x^q)^n + nq \int x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} dx \\
 \Rightarrow (nq + p + 1) \int_0^1 x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx \\
 &\quad = \left[ x^{p+1} (1 - x^q)^n \right]_0^1 + nq \int_0^1 x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} dx \\
 \Rightarrow (nq + p + 1) \int_0^1 x^p (1 - x^q)^n dx \\
 &\quad = nq \int_0^1 x^p (1 - x^q)^{n-1} dx \\
 \Rightarrow (nq + p + 1) I_n \\
 &\quad = nq I_{n-1} \qquad \text{Proved}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow I_n = \frac{nq}{nq + p + 1} I_{n-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Rightarrow I_n &= \frac{nq}{nq + p + 1} \cdot \frac{(n-1)q}{(n-1)q + p + 1} I_{n-2} \\
 &= \frac{nq}{nq + p + 1} \cdot \frac{(n-1)q}{(n-1)q + p + 1} \cdots \frac{(2-1)q}{(2-1)q + p + 1} I_0 \\
 &= \frac{q^n \cdot \frac{n!}{n!}}{(p+1+nq)(p+1+n-1q) \cdots (p+1+q)} I_0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now } I_0 = \int_0^1 x^p dx$$

$$= \left( \frac{x^{p+1}}{p+1} \right)_0^1$$

$$= \frac{1}{p+1}$$

$$\therefore I_n = \frac{q^n |n|}{(p+1+nq)(p+1+n-1q) \dots (p+1+q)} \frac{1}{p+1}$$

**Example 4.** If  $I_n = \int x^n (a-x)^{1/2} dx$ , prove that  $(2n+3) I_n = 2an I_{n-1} - 2x^n (a-x)^{1/2}$  and evaluate  $\int_0^a x^2 \sqrt{ax-x^2} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\therefore I_n = \int x^n (a-x)^{1/2} dx$$

$$\therefore I_{n-1} = \int x^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} dx$$

$$\text{So let } P = x^{n-1+1} (a-x)^{1/2+1}$$

$$\Rightarrow P = x^n (a-x)^{3/2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{dP}{dx} &= nx^{n-1} (a-x)^{3/2} + \frac{3}{2} x^n (a-x)^{1/2} (-1) \\ &= nx^{n-1} (a-x)(a-x)^{1/2} - \frac{3}{2} x^n (a-x)^{1/2} \\ &= nax^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} - nx^n (a-x)^{1/2} - \frac{3}{2} x^n (a-x)^{1/2} \\ &= nax^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} - \left(n + \frac{3}{2}\right) x^n (a-x)^{1/2} \end{aligned}$$

Integrating, we get

$$P = na \int x^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} dx - \left(n + \frac{3}{2}\right) \int x^n (a-x)^{1/2} dx$$

$$\Rightarrow 2P = 2na I_{n-1} - (2n+3) I_n$$

$$\Rightarrow (2n+3) I_n = 2an I_{n-1} - 2P$$

$$\Rightarrow (2n+3) I_n = 2an I_{n-1} - 2x^n (a-x)^{1/2} \quad \text{Proved}$$

$$\Rightarrow (2n+3) \int_0^a x^n (a-x)^{1/2} dx$$

$$= 2an \int_0^a x^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} dx - 2 \left[ x^n (a-x)^{1/2} \right]_0^a$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow (2n+3) \int_0^a x^n (a-x)^{1/2} dx \\ = 2an \int_0^a x^{n-1} (a-x)^{1/2} dx\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put } n = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow 8 \int_0^a x^{3/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx \\ = 5a \int_0^a x^{1/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow \int_0^a x^{1/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx \\ = \frac{5a}{8} \int_0^a x^{1/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx \\ = \frac{5a}{8} \cdot \frac{2a \cdot \frac{3}{2}}{3 \times 3} \int_0^a x^{1/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx \\ = \frac{5a^2}{16} \int_0^a x^{1/2} (a-x)^{1/2} dx\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Put } x = a \sin^2 \theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore dx &= 2a \sin \theta \cos \theta \\ &= \frac{5a^2}{16} \int_0^{\pi/2} a^{1/2} \sin \theta a^{1/2} \cos \theta \cdot 2a \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\ &= \frac{5a^4}{8} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \theta d\theta \\ &= \frac{5a^4}{8} \frac{\left[\frac{3}{2}\right] \left[\frac{3}{2}\right]}{2 \sqrt{3}} \\ &= \frac{5a^4}{16} \frac{\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\pi} \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\pi}}{2} \\ &= \frac{5\pi a^4}{128}\end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Connect  $\int x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx$  with  $\int x^{m-n-1}$   
 $(a+bx^n)^p dx$  and evaluate  $\int \frac{x^3}{(1-x^3)^{1/3}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\text{Let } P = x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{dP}{dx} &= (m-n) x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} \\ &\quad + x^{m-n} (p+1) (a+bx^n)^p (nbx^{n-1}) \\ &= (m-n) x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n) (a+bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + x^{m-1} (p+1) nb (a+bx^n)^p \\ &= (m-n) ax^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + (m-n) b x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + x^{m-1} (p+1) nb (a+bx^n)^p \\ &= (m-n) ax^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + b (a+bx^n)^p x^{m-1} \{m-n+np+n\} \\ &= (m-n) a x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p \\ &\quad + b (m+np) x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p \end{aligned}$$

Integrating, we get

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (m-n) a \int x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\ &\quad + b (m+np) \int x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\ \Rightarrow b (m+np) \int x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\ &= x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1} - (m-n) a \int x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\ \Rightarrow \int x^{m-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \\ &= \frac{x^{m-n} (a+bx^n)^{p+1}}{b (m+np)} - \frac{a (m-n)}{b (m+np)} \int x^{m-n-1} (a+bx^n)^p dx \end{aligned}$$

Put  $m - 1 = 8$ ,  $a = 1$ ,  $b = -1$ ,  $n = 3$ ,  $p = -\frac{1}{3}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int x^8 (1-x^2)^{-1/3} dx &= -\frac{x^6 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{8} + \frac{3}{4} \int x^3 (1-x^2)^{-1/3} dx \\
 &= -\frac{x^6 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{8} + \frac{3}{4} \left[ -\frac{1}{5} x^5 (1-x^2)^{2/3} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \frac{3}{5} \int x^2 (1-x^2)^{-1/3} dx \right] \\
 &= -\frac{x^6 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{8} - \frac{3x^5 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{20} \\
 &\quad + \frac{9}{20} \int x^2 (1-x^2)^{-1/3} dx \\
 &= -\frac{x^6 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{8} - \frac{3x^5 (1-x^2)^{2/3}}{20} \\
 &\quad - \frac{9}{20} \cdot \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{(1-x^2)^{2/3}}{\frac{2}{3}} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{40} (1-x^2)^{2/3} [5x^6 + 6x^5 + 9]
 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 11.7

1. Prove that

$$\int (a^2 + x^2)^{n/2} dx = \frac{x(a^2 + x^2)^{n/2}}{n+1} + \frac{na^2}{n+1} \int (a^2 + x^2)^{(n/2)-1} dx$$

2. Evaluate  $\int (a^2 + x^2)^{3/2} dx$ .

3. If  $I_n = \int_0^a (a^2 - x^2)^n dx$  and  $n > 0$ , prove that

$$I_n = \frac{2na^2}{2n+1} I_{n-1}$$

Hence evaluate  $\int_0^a (a^2 - x^2)^1 dx$

4. If  $U_n = \int x^n \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx$ , then prove that

$$U_n = -\frac{x^{n+1}(a^2 - x^2)^{1/2}}{n+2} + \frac{n-1}{n+2} a^2 U_{n-2}$$

Hence evaluate

$$\int_0^a x^4 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx$$

5. Investigate a formula of reduction applicable to

$$\int x^m (1+x^2)^{n/2} dx$$

where  $m$  and  $n$  are +ve integers, and complete the integration if  $m = 5$ ,  $n = 7$

6. If  $m$  is a +ve integer, find a reduction formula for

$$\int x^m \sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx$$

Hence obtain the value of

$$\int_0^{2a} x^3 \sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx$$

7. Prove that

$$\int_0^1 x^{-1/4} (1-x^{1/2})^{1/2} dx = \frac{5}{16} \int_0^1 x^{-1/4} (1-x^{1/2})^{1/2} dx$$

8. If  $U_n = \int x^n (1+x^4)^{-1/2} dx$ , prove that

$$U_n = \frac{x^{n+2} (1+x^4)^{1/2}}{n+1} - \frac{n-3}{n+1} U_{n-4}$$

9. If  $I_n = \int \frac{dx}{(x^2 + K)^n}$  where  $n$  is a +ve integer, prove that

$$I_n = \frac{x}{(x^2 + K)^{n-1} (2n-2)K} + \frac{2n-3}{(2n-2)K} I_{n-1}$$

10. Evaluate  $\int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(1+x^2)^{n+1/2}}$  where  $n$  is a +ve integer.

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 11.7

$$2. \frac{1}{48} x [8x^4 + 26a^2x^2 + 33a^4] \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} + \frac{5}{16} a^6 \sin h^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$3. \frac{16}{35} a^3$$

$$4. \frac{\pi a^6}{32}$$

$$5. I_{m,n} = \frac{x^{m+1} (1+x^2)^{n+1} - (m+1) I_{m-2,n}}{m+n+1}$$

where  $I_{m,n}$  is the given integral.

$$I_{5,7} = \left\{ \frac{x^4}{13} - \frac{4x^2}{13.11} + \frac{4.2}{13.11.9} \right\} (1+x^2)^{9/2}$$

$$6. (m+2) I_m = (2m+1) a I_{m-1} - x^{m+1} (2ax - x^2)^{1/2} \text{ where}$$

$$I_m = \int x^m \sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx, \quad \frac{7\pi a^5}{8}$$

$$10. \frac{2^{2n-2} (n-1)^2}{2n-1}$$

$$11.20 \quad \text{Reduction formula for } \int \frac{e^{mx}}{x^n} dx, \text{ where } n > 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{e^{mx}}{x^n} dx \\ &= \int \frac{e^{mx} x^{-n}}{1} dx \end{aligned}$$

Integrate by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} &= e^{mx} \frac{x^{-n+1}}{-n+1} - \int m e^{mx} \frac{x^{-n+1}}{-n+1} dx \\ &= -\frac{e^{mx}}{(n-1) x^{n-1}} + \frac{m}{n-1} \int \frac{e^{mx}}{x^{n-1}} dx \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.



### 11.21 Reduction formula for $\int x^m (\log x)^n dx$

$$I = \int x^m (\log x)^n dx$$

Integrating by parts

$$\begin{aligned} &= (\log x)^n \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} - \int n (\log x)^{n-1} \cdot \frac{1}{x} \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} dx \\ &= \frac{x^{m+1} (\log x)^n}{m+1} - \frac{n}{m+1} \int x^m (\log x)^{n-1} dx \end{aligned}$$

This is the required reduction formula.

### 11.22 Reduction formula for $\int \frac{x^m}{(\log x)^n} dx$

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int \frac{x^m}{(\log x)^n} dx \\ &= \int x^{m+1} \left\{ \frac{1}{x (\log x)^n} \right\} dx \\ &= - \frac{x^{m+1}}{(n-1)(\log x)^{n-1}} \\ &\quad - \int (m+1) x^m \left\{ - \frac{1}{(n-1)(\log x)^{n-1}} \right\} dx \\ &= - \frac{x^{m+1}}{(n-1)(\log x)^{n-1}} + \frac{m+1}{n-1} \int \frac{x^m}{(\log x)^{n-1}} dx \end{aligned}$$

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Prove that  $\int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^n dx = n!$

**Solution :**

$$I_n = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^n dx$$

Integrating by parts

$$= [x^n - e^{-x}]_0^{\infty} + \int_0^{\infty} nx^{n-1} e^{-x} dx$$

$$= n \int_0^{\infty} x^{n-1} e^{-x} dx$$

$$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} e^{-x} x^n = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{x^n}{e^x}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 1}{e^x}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n}{e^x} = \frac{n}{\infty} = 0$$

By applying De L'Hospital's rule  $n$  times

$$= n I_{n-1}$$

$$= n(n-1) I_{n-2}$$

$$= n(n-1)(n-2) I_{n-3}$$

$$= n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 3.2.1. I_0$$

$$= \underline{n} I_0$$

$$= \underline{n} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} dx$$

$$= \underline{n} \cdot 1$$

$$= \underline{n}$$

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 x^m (\log x)^n dx$  where  $m \geq 0$  and  $n$  is a positive integer.

**Solution :** We know that

$$\int x^m (\log x)^n dx$$

$$= \frac{x^{m+1} (\log x)^n}{m+1} - \frac{n}{m+1} \int x^m (\log x)^{n-1} dx$$

$$\therefore \int_0^1 x^m (\log x)^n dx$$

$$= \left[ \frac{x^{m+1} (\log x)^n}{m+1} \right]_0^1 - \frac{n}{m+1} \int_0^1 x^m (\log x)^{n-1} dx$$

$$\Rightarrow I_n = -\frac{n}{m+1} I_{n-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{n}{m+1} \cdot \frac{-(n-1)}{m+1} I_{n-2} \\
&= -\frac{n}{m+1} \cdot \frac{-(n-1)}{m+1} \cdot \frac{-(n-2)}{m+1} \cdots \frac{-1}{m+1} I_0 \\
&= \frac{(-1)^n |n|}{(m+1)^n} I_0 \\
&= \frac{(-1)^n |n|}{(m+1)^n} \int_0^1 x^n dx \\
&= \frac{(-1)^n |n|}{(m+1)^n} \cdot \frac{1}{m+1} \\
&= \frac{(-1)^n |n|}{(m+1)^{n+1}}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** If  $m$  and  $n$  be positive integers, prove that

$$\int_0^1 x^{n-1} (\log x)^m dx = -\frac{m}{n} \int_0^1 x^{n-1} (\log x)^{m-1} dx$$

Hence deduce that

$$\int_0^1 x^{n-1} (\log x)^m dx = \frac{(-1)^m |m|}{n^{m+1}}$$

**Solution :**

$$\int_0^1 x^{n-1} (\log x)^m dx$$

|| |

Integrate by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left[ (\log x)^m \frac{x^n}{n} \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 m (\log x)^{m-1} \cdot \frac{1}{x} \cdot \frac{x^n}{n} dx \\
&= -\frac{m}{n} \int_0^1 x^{n-1} (\log x)^{m-1} dx \quad \text{Proved}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\Rightarrow \quad I_{m,n} &= -\frac{m}{n} I_{m-1,n} \\
&= -\frac{m}{n} \cdot \frac{-(m-1)}{n} I_{m-2,n}
\end{aligned}$$

## HARDER SOLVED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Find a reduction formula for  $\int \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} dx$  and prove that  $\int_0^\pi \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} dx = \pi$  or 0 according as  $n$  is odd or even positive integer.

**Solution :**

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}\sin nx - \sin (n-2)x \\ = 2 \sin x \cos (n-1)x\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} - \frac{\sin (n-2)x}{\sin x} = 2 \cos (n-1)x$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} = 2 \cos (n-1)x + \frac{\sin (n-2)x}{\sin x}$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} dx = \int 2 \cos (n-1)x dx + \int \frac{\sin (n-2)x}{\sin x} dx$$

$$\Rightarrow \int \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} dx = \frac{2 \sin (n-1)x}{n-1} + \int \frac{\sin (n-2)x}{\sin x} dx \quad \dots (1)$$

This is the required reduction formula.

$$\text{Let } I_n = \int_0^\pi \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} dx$$

$$\text{then } I_n = \left[ \frac{2 \sin (n-1)x}{n-1} \right]_0^\pi + \int_0^\pi \frac{\sin (n-2)x}{\sin x} dx \quad \left| \begin{array}{l} \text{From (1)} \end{array} \right.$$

$$\Rightarrow I_n = I_{n-2}$$

$$\Rightarrow I_n = I_{n-4}$$

$$= I_{n-6}$$

$$= \dots \dots \dots \begin{cases} = I_1 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \\ = I_0 & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Now } I_1 = \int_0^\pi \frac{\sin x}{\sin x} dx = \pi$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= e^{\frac{1}{2}x} \left[ \underline{n} x^{n+1} + \underline{n-1} x^n + \dots + \underline{2} x^3 + \underline{1} x^2 \right] + I_0 \\
&= I_0 + e^{\frac{1}{2}x} \left[ \underline{1} x^2 + \underline{2} x^3 + \dots + \underline{n} x^{n+1} \right] \text{ Proved}
\end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 11.9**

1. Obtain a reduction formula for  $\int \tan^h x \, dx$  and deduce the value of  $\int \tan^3 x \, dx$ .

2. If  $I_n = \int_0^{\pi/4} \tan^n \theta \, d\theta$ , prove that

$$n[I_{n-1} + I_{n+1}] = 1$$

3. Prove that

$$\int_0^a x^3 (2a^2 - x^2)^{-3} \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \left( \log 2 - \frac{1}{2} \right)$$

4. Prove that

$$\int \frac{1}{\cos^n \theta} \, d\theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{(n-1) \cos^{n-1} \theta} + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{1}{\cos^{n-2} \theta} \, d\theta$$

5. Prove that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \operatorname{cosec}^{2n+1} \phi \, d\phi &= -\frac{1}{2n} \cot \phi \operatorname{cosec}^{2n-1} \phi \\
&\quad + \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2n} \right) \int \operatorname{cosec}^{2n-1} \phi \, d\phi
\end{aligned}$$

6. Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi} \frac{du}{\cos^h u} = \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{du}{\cos^{h-2} u}; \quad n > 2$$

7. If  $U_n = \int \frac{\sin nx}{\sin x} \, dx$ , prove that

$$U_n = \frac{2 \sin(n-1)x}{n-1} + U_{n-2}$$

Hence evaluate

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin 7x}{\sin x} \, dx$$

20. Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \frac{x^3 \sin^{-1} x}{(1-x^2)^{1/2}} dx$

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 11.9

$$1. \int \tan h^n x \, dx = -\frac{\tan h^{n-1} x}{n-1} + \int \tan h^{n-2} x \, dx; \\ -\frac{\tan h^2 x}{2} + \log \cos hx$$

$$7. \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$9. -\frac{16}{3}$$

$$10. \frac{11\pi}{192}$$

$$12. \frac{\{n-1\}^2 2^{2n-2}}{2n-1 a^{2n}}$$

$$13. \frac{(2m+1)\pi a^{m+2}}{m(m+2)2^m}$$

$$16. a^3 \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{2}{3} \right)$$

$$17. \frac{\left[ n + \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\pi} \right]}{2[n+1]}$$

$$19. \int \frac{x}{\sin^n x} \, dx = -\frac{x \cos x}{(n-1) \sin^{n-1} x} - \frac{1}{(n-1)(n-2) \sin^{n-2} x} \\ + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{x}{\sin^{n-2} x} \, dx$$

$$20. \frac{7}{9}$$

# 12

## Beta and Gamma Functions

---

### 12.1 Definitions

Euler, a great mathematician, gave two definite integrals which after his name are styled as Eulerian integral of first kind (or First Eulerian Integral) and Eulerian integral of second kind (or Second Eulerian Integral). These integrals are of fundamental importance in the theory of definite integrals. They are respectively given as follows :

$$(1) \beta(l, m) = \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} dx$$

where  $l, m$  are positive numbers, integrals or fractional.

It is read as "Beta  $l, m$ ", and

$$(2) \Gamma n = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{n-1} dx, \text{ where } n > 0.$$

It is read as "Gamma  $n$ ".

These integrals are known as Beta and Gamma Functions respectively.

### 12.2 Evaluation of Beta Function

We know that

$$\beta(l, m) = \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} dx$$

**Case 1.** Let  $m$  be a positive integer, then integrating by parts taking  $(1-x)^{m-1}$  as the first function and  $x^{l-1}$  as the second function, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(l, m) &= \left[ (1-x)^{m-1} \frac{x^l}{l} \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 -(m-1)(1-x)^{m-2} \frac{x^l}{l} dx \\ &= \frac{m-1}{l} \int_0^1 x^l (1-x)^{m-2} dx \end{aligned}$$

Again integrating by parts taking  $(1-x)^{m-2}$  as the first function and  $x^l$  as the second function, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{m-1}{l} \left[ \left\{ (1-x)^{m-2} \frac{x^{l+1}}{l+1} \right\}_0^1 \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \int_0^1 (m-2)(1-x)^{m-3} \frac{x^{l+1}}{l+1} dx \right] \\
 &= \frac{m-1}{l} \cdot \frac{m-2}{l+1} \int_0^1 (1-x)^{m-3} x^{l+1} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Proceeding in this manner, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{m-1}{l} \cdot \frac{m-2}{l+1} \cdot \frac{m-3}{l+2} \cdots \frac{1}{l+m-2} \\
 &\quad \int_0^1 (1-x)^{m-m} \cdot x^{l+m-2} dx \\
 &= \frac{m-1}{l} \cdot \frac{m-2}{l+1} \cdot \frac{m-3}{l+2} \cdots \frac{1}{l+m-2} \cdot \left( \frac{x^{l+m-1}}{l+m-1} \right)_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{m-1}{l} \cdot \frac{m-2}{l+1} \cdot \frac{m-3}{l+2} \cdots \frac{1}{l+m-2} \cdot \frac{1}{l+m-1} \\
 &= \frac{(m-1)!}{l(l+1)(l+2) \cdots (l+m-1)}
 \end{aligned}$$

If  $l$  also is a +ve integer, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(m-1)!(l-1)!}{(l-1)! \{l(l+1)(l+2) \cdots (l+m-1)\}} \\
 &= \frac{(m-1)!(l-1)!}{(l+m-1)!}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Case II.** Let  $l$  be a positive integer, then integrating by parts taking  $x^{l-1}$  as the first function and  $(1-x)^{m-1}$  as the second function, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \beta(l, m) &= \left[ -x^{l-1} \frac{(1-x)^m}{m} \right]_0^1 + \int_0^1 (l-1)x^{l-2} \frac{(1-x)^m}{m} dx \\
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \int_0^1 x^{l-2} (1-x)^m dx
 \end{aligned}$$



Again integrating by parts taking  $x^{l-2}$  as the first function and  $(1-x)^m$  as the second function, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \left[ \left\{ -x^{l-2} \frac{(1-x)^{m+1}}{m+1} \right\}_0^1 \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \int_0^1 (l-2) x^{l-3} \frac{(1-x)^{m+1}}{m+1} dx \right] \\
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \cdot \frac{l-2}{m+1} \int_0^1 x^{l-3} (1-x)^{m+1} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Proceeding in this manner, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \cdot \frac{l-2}{m+1} \cdot \frac{l-3}{m+2} \cdots \frac{1}{m+l-2} \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m+l-2} dx \\
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \cdot \frac{l-2}{m+1} \cdots \frac{1}{m+l-2} \left[ -\frac{(1-x)^{m+l-1}}{m+l-1} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{l-1}{m} \cdot \frac{l-2}{m+1} \cdots \frac{1}{m+l-2} \cdot \frac{1}{m+l-1} \\
 &= \frac{(l-1)!}{m(m+1) \cdots (m+l-1)}
 \end{aligned}$$

If  $m$  also is a +ve integer, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(l-1)!(m-1)!}{(m-1)! \{m(m+1) \cdots (m+l-1)\}} \\
 &= \frac{(l-1)!(m-1)!}{(l+m-1)!}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 12.3 Transformations of Beta Function

(i)  $\beta(l, m) = \beta(m, l)$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \beta(l, m) &= \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 (1-x)^{l-1} \{1 - (1-x)\}^{m-1} dx \\
 &\quad \left[ \because \int_0^a f(x) dx = \int_0^a f(a-x) dx \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \int_0^1 x^{m-1} (1-x)^{l-1} dx = \beta(m, l)$$

**Aliter.** We have

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(l, m) &= \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} dx \\ &\quad \text{[Put } x = 1-y \therefore dx = -dy] \\ &= \int_1^0 (1-y)^{l-1} (1-\overline{1-y})^{m-1} (-dy) \\ &= \int_0^1 y^{m-1} (1-y)^{l-1} dy \\ &= \beta(m, l) \end{aligned}$$

$$(ii) \quad \beta(l, m) = \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{l-1}}{(1+x)^{l+m}} dx$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(l, m) &= \int_0^\infty x^{l-1} (1+x)^{m-1} dx \\ &\quad \left[ \text{Put } x = \frac{1}{1+y} \therefore dx = -\frac{1}{(1+y)^2} dy \right] \\ &= - \int_\infty^0 \frac{1}{(1+y)^{l-1}} \frac{y^{m-1}}{(1+y)^{m-1}} \frac{1}{(1+y)^2} dy \\ &= \int_0^\infty \frac{y^{m-1}}{(1+y)^{m+l}} dy \\ &= \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{m-1}}{(1+x)^{m+l}} dx \quad \dots (1) \\ &\quad \left[ \because \int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^b f(t) dt \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \beta(m, l) = \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{l-1}}{(1+x)^{m+l}} dx \quad \dots (2)$$

But

$$\beta(l, m) = \beta(m, l)$$

$$\therefore \beta(l, m) = \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{l-1}}{(1+x)^{m+l}} dx$$

$$(iii) \beta(l, m) = 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2l-1} \theta \cos^{2m-1} \theta d\theta$$

We have

$$\beta(l, m) = \int_0^1 x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} dx$$

[Put  $x = \sin^2 \theta \therefore dx = 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \beta(l, m) &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2l-2} \theta \cos^{2m-2} \theta \cdot 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\ &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2l-1} \theta \cos^{2m-1} \theta d\theta \end{aligned}$$

## 12.4 Evaluation of Gamma Function

We have

$$\Gamma n = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{n-1} dx$$

Integrating by parts taking  $x^{n-1}$  as the first function and  $e^{-x}$  as the second function, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma n &= \left\{ x^{n-1} (-e^{-x}) \right\}_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty (n-1) x^{n-2} (-e^{-x}) dx \\ &= (n-1) \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{n-2} dx \\ &= (n-1) \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{(n-1)-1} dx \\ &= (n-1) \Gamma(n-1) \end{aligned} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} (-x^{n-1} e^{-x}) &= \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left( -\frac{x^{n-1}}{e^x} \right) \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{-x^{n-1}}{1+x+\frac{x^2}{2!}+\dots} \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

In (1) replacing  $n$  by  $(n-1)$ , we get

$$\Gamma(n-1) = (n-2) \Gamma(n-2) \quad \dots (2)$$

From (2) putting the value of  $\Gamma(n-1)$  in (1), we get

$$\Gamma n = (n-1)(n-2) \Gamma(n-2)$$

If  $n$  is a +ve integer, then continuing this process, we get

$$\Gamma n = (n-1)(n-2)(n-3) \dots 1 \Gamma 1$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{But } \Gamma 1 &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} x^{1-1} dx \quad [\text{putting } n = 1 \text{ in } \Gamma n] \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} dx \\ &= (-e^{-x})_0^{\infty} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \Gamma n = (n-1)(n-2) \dots 1 = (n-1)!$$

$$\text{Thus } \Gamma n = (n-1) \Gamma (n-1) \quad \forall n$$

$$\text{and } \Gamma n = (n-1)! \quad [\text{if } n \text{ is a +ve integer}]$$

## 12.5 Recurrence Formula for Gamma Function

We know that for all values of  $n$ ,

$$\Gamma n = (n-1) \Gamma (n-1)$$

Replace  $n$  by  $n+1$ , we get

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n\Gamma n$$

This is known as recurrence formula for the gamma function.

## 12.6 Generalization of Gamma Function

Applying the process of analytic continuation, we can generalize  $\Gamma n$  for  $n < 0$  by using recurrence formula in the form

$$\Gamma n = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{n}$$

**Two values**

$$(i) \text{ Put } n = 0$$

$$\Gamma 0 = \frac{\Gamma 1}{0} = \frac{1}{0} = \infty$$

$$(ii) \text{ Let } n = -p \text{ where } p \text{ is a positive integer, then}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma(-p) &= \frac{\Gamma(-p+1)}{-p} \\ &= \frac{(-p)!}{-p} \quad [\Gamma(p+1) = p\Gamma p \quad \forall p] \\ &= \infty \end{aligned}$$

**Aliter.** We know that

$$\int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^{n-1}}{1+x} dx = \frac{\pi}{\sin n\pi}; 0 < n < 1$$

Put  $\frac{x}{1+x} = y$

$$\therefore x = y + yx$$

$$\therefore x(1-y) = y$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{y}{1-y}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore dx &= \frac{(1-y)1-y(-1)}{(1-y)^2} dy = \frac{1}{(1-y)^2} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{y^{n-1}}{(1-y)^{n-1}} \cdot \frac{1}{1+\frac{y}{1-y}} \frac{1}{(1-y)^2} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \frac{y^{n-1}}{(1-y)^n} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 y^{n-1} (1-y)^{-n} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 y^{n-1} (1-y)^{(1-n)-1} dy \\ &= \beta(n, 1-n) \\ &= \frac{\Gamma n \Gamma(1-n)}{\Gamma(n+1-n)} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma n \Gamma(1-n)}{\Gamma 1} \\ &= \Gamma n \Gamma(1-n) \end{aligned} \quad [\because \Gamma 1 = 1]$$

### 12.10 Duplication Formula

If  $m$  is positive, then

$$\Gamma m \Gamma\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma 2m}{2^{2m-1}}$$

**Proof.** We know that

$$\beta(m, n) = \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{(m+n)!} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2n-1} \theta d\theta = \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{(m+n)!} \quad \dots (2)$$

Putting  $2n - 1 = 0$  i.e.  $n = \frac{1}{2}$  in (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta d\theta &= \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma \frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\ \Rightarrow 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta d\theta &= \frac{\Gamma m \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \quad \dots (3) \end{aligned}$$

Again putting  $n = m$  in (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2m-1} \theta d\theta &= \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma m}{\Gamma(m+m)} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{2}{2^{2m-1}} \int_0^{\pi/2} 2^{2m-1} \sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2m-1} \theta d\theta &= \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{2}{2^{2m-1}} \int_0^{\pi/2} (2 \sin \theta \cos \theta)^{2m-1} d\theta &= \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{2}{2^{2m-1}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} 2\theta d\theta &= \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \\ \text{Put } 2\theta = \phi, \text{ so that } 2d\theta &= d\phi \\ \Rightarrow \frac{1}{2^{2m-1}} \int_0^{\pi} \sin^{2m-1} \phi d\phi &= \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{2}{2^{2m-1}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \phi d\phi &= \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \\ \Rightarrow \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \phi d\phi &= 2^{2m-2} \frac{(\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)} \quad \dots (4) \end{aligned}$$

From (3) and (4), we obtain

$$\frac{\Gamma m \sqrt{\pi}}{2\Gamma\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)} = \frac{2^{2m-2} (\Gamma m)^2}{\Gamma(2m)}$$

**Proof.** Let

$$P = \Gamma \frac{1}{n} \Gamma \frac{2}{n} \Gamma \frac{3}{n} \dots \Gamma \frac{n-1}{n}$$

Writing the value of  $P$  in the reverse order

$$P = \Gamma \frac{n-1}{n} \Gamma \frac{n-2}{n} \Gamma \frac{n-3}{n} \dots \Gamma \frac{1}{n}$$

Multiplying the two values of  $P$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} P^2 &= \left\{ \Gamma \frac{1}{n} \Gamma 1 - \frac{1}{n} \right\} \left\{ \Gamma \frac{2}{n} \Gamma 1 - \frac{2}{n} \right\} \\ &\quad \left\{ \Gamma \frac{3}{n} \Gamma 1 - \frac{3}{n} \right\} \dots \left\{ \Gamma \frac{n-1}{n} \Gamma 1 - \frac{n-1}{n} \right\} \\ &= \frac{\pi}{\sin \frac{\pi}{n}} \cdot \frac{\pi}{\sin \frac{2\pi}{n}} \cdot \frac{\pi}{\sin \frac{3\pi}{n}} \dots \frac{\pi}{\sin \frac{n-1}{n} \pi} \\ &= \frac{\pi^{n-1}}{\sin \frac{\pi}{n} \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} \cdot \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} \dots \sin \frac{n-1}{n} \pi} \quad \dots (1) \end{aligned}$$

Now we know that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\sin n\theta}{\sin \theta} &= 2^{n-1} \sin \left( \theta + \frac{\pi}{n} \right) \sin \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{n} \right) \\ &\quad \dots \sin \left( \theta + \frac{n-1}{n} \pi \right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking limit as  $\theta \rightarrow 0$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L.H.S.} &= \lim_{\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin n\theta}{\sin \theta} \\ &= \lim_{\theta \rightarrow 0} \left\{ \frac{\sin n\theta}{\sin \theta} \right\} n \left\{ \frac{\theta}{\sin \theta} \right\} = 1 \cdot n \cdot 1 = n \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  In limit

$$\begin{aligned} n &= 2^{n-1} \sin \frac{\pi}{n} \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} \cdot \sin \frac{3\pi}{n} \dots \sin \frac{n-1}{n} \pi \\ \Rightarrow \sin \frac{\pi}{n} \cdot \sin \frac{2\pi}{n} \dots \sin \frac{n-1}{n} \pi &= \frac{n}{2^{n-1}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{From (1) } P^2 = \frac{\pi^{n-1} \cdot 2^{n-1}}{n} = \frac{(2\pi)^{n-1}}{n}$$

$$\Rightarrow P = \frac{(2\pi)^{(n-1/2)}}{n^{1/2}}$$

### 12.13 To evaluate the integrals

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-ax} \cos bx x^{m-1} dx$$

$$\text{and } \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} \sin bx x^{m-1} dx$$

We know from 11.7 (i) that

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-ax} x^{m-1} dx = \frac{\Gamma m}{a^m}$$

Put  $z = a - ib$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty e^{-(a-ib)x} x^{m-1} dx &= \frac{\Gamma m}{(a-ib)^m} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma m (a+ib)^m}{(a-ib)^m (a+ib)^m} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma m (a+ib)^m}{(a^2+b^2)^m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} e^{ibx} x^{m-1} dx = \frac{\Gamma m (a+ib)^m}{(a^2+b^2)^m}$$

Put  $a = r \cos \theta$ ,  $b = r \sin \theta$

$$\text{then } r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

$$\text{and } \theta = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)$$

$$\therefore \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} e^{ibx} x^{m-1} dx = \frac{\Gamma m (a^2 + b^2)^{m/2} [\cos \theta + i \sin \theta]^m}{(a^2 + b^2)^m}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow \int_0^\infty e^{-ax} x^{m-1} (\cos bx + i \sin bx) dx \\ = \frac{\Gamma m (\cos m\theta + i \sin m\theta)}{(a^2 + b^2)^{m/2}} \end{aligned}$$



Equating real and imaginary parts, we get

$$\int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} x^{m-1} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{\Gamma m \cos m\theta}{(a^2 + b^2)^{\frac{m}{2}}} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{and } \int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} x^{m-1} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{\Gamma m \sin m\theta}{(a^2 + b^2)^{\frac{m}{2}}} \quad \dots (2)$$

where  $\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)$

**Deductions :** Put  $a = 0$  so that  $\theta = \pi/2$  in (1) and (2), we obtain

$$\int_0^{\infty} x^{m-1} \cos bx \, dx = \frac{\Gamma m}{b^m} \cos \frac{m\pi}{2}$$

$$\text{and } \int_0^{\infty} x^{m-1} \sin bx \, dx = \frac{\Gamma m}{b^m} \sin \frac{m\pi}{2}$$

**12.14 To evaluate**  $\int_0^{\infty} \cos(bx^{1/n}) \, dx$

$$\text{Let } I = \int_0^{\infty} \cos(bx^{1/n}) \, dx \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{[Put } x = z^n \\ \therefore dx = nz^{n-1} \, dz \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int_0^{\infty} \cos(bz) \, nz^{n-1} \, dz \\ &= n \int_0^{\infty} z^{n-1} \cos(bz) \, dz \\ &= n \frac{\Gamma n}{b^n} \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{b^n} \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} \end{aligned}$$

**12.15 To evaluate**  $\int_0^{\infty} \sin(bx^{1/n}) \, dx$

$$\text{Let } I = \int_0^{\infty} \sin(bx^{1/n}) \, dx \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{[Put } x = z^n \\ \therefore dx = nz^{n-1} \, dz \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= n \int_0^{\infty} \sin(bz) \, z^{n-1} \, dz \\ &= n \frac{\Gamma n}{b^n} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{b^n} \sin \left( \frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** The value of  $\Gamma n \Gamma(1 - n)$  is

- (i)  $\beta(n, 1)$  (ii)  $\beta(n, 1 - n)$   
 (iii)  $\beta(n, 1 - 2n)$  (iv)  $\beta(1 - n, 1 - n)$ .

**Solution :**

The value of  $\Gamma n \Gamma(1 - n)$  is  $\beta(n, 1 - n)$

**Example 2.** The value of  $\int_0^\pi e^{-x^2} dx$  is

- (i)  $\pi$  (ii)  $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$   
 (iii)  $\sqrt{\pi}$  (iv)  $\frac{n\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$ .

**Solution :**

The value of  $\int_0^\pi e^{-x^2} dx$  is  $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$

**Example 3.** Express  $\int_0^1 x^m (1 - x^n)^p dx$  in terms of the beta function, and hence evaluate  $\int_0^1 x^5 (1 - x^3)^{10} dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 x^m (1 - x^n)^p dx & \quad \left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Put } x^n = y \\ \therefore x = y^{1/n} \\ \therefore dx = \frac{1}{n} y^{1/n - 1} dy \end{array} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \int_0^1 y^{m/n} (1 - y)^p y^{1/n - 1} dy \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \int_0^1 y^{\frac{m+1}{n} - 1} (1 - y)^{(p+1) - 1} dy \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \beta\left(\frac{m+1}{n}, p+1\right) \end{aligned}$$

Put  $m = 5$ ,  $n = 3$ ,  $p = 10$ , we get

$$\int_0^1 x^5 (1 - x^3)^{10} dx = \frac{1}{3} \beta\left(\frac{5+1}{3}, 10+1\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{3} \beta(2, 11) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \frac{\Gamma 2 \Gamma 11}{\Gamma(2+11)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \frac{\Gamma 2 \Gamma 11}{\Gamma 13} \\
 &= \frac{1!(10)!}{3(12)!} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3 \cdot 12 \cdot 11} \\
 &= \frac{1}{396}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\Gamma\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right), \Gamma\left(-\frac{3}{2}\right), \Gamma\left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)$

**Solution :** We know that

$$\Gamma n \Gamma(1-n) = \frac{\pi}{\sin n\pi} \quad \dots (1)$$

(i) Put  $n = -\frac{1}{2}$  in (1), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Gamma\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) &= \frac{\pi}{\sin\left(-\frac{1}{2}\pi\right)} = -\pi \\
 \Rightarrow \Gamma\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) &= \frac{-\pi}{\Gamma\frac{3}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{-\pi}{\frac{1}{2} \Gamma\frac{1}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{-\pi}{\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\pi}} = -2\sqrt{\pi}
 \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Put  $n = -\frac{3}{2}$  in (1), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{4^{3/2}} \int_0^\infty e^{-y} y^{3/2-1} dy \\
 &= \frac{1}{2^3} \Gamma\left(\frac{7}{2}\right) \\
 &= \frac{\frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \Gamma\frac{1}{2}}{2^3} \\
 &= \frac{15\sqrt{\pi}}{1024}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** Prove that  $\int_0^1 x^2(1-x)^3 dx = \frac{1}{60}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 x^2(1-x)^3 dx &= \int_0^1 x^{3-1}(1-x)^{4-1} dx \\
 &= \beta(3, 4) \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma 3 \Gamma 4}{\Gamma(3+4)} \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma 3 \Gamma 4}{\Gamma 7} \\
 &= \frac{2! 3!}{6!} \\
 &= \frac{(2.1)(3.2.1)}{(6.5.4.3.2.1)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{60}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** Evaluate  $\int_0^a \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{a-x}} dx$ .

**Solution :**

Let  $I = \int_0^a \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{a-x}} dx$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &[\text{Put } x = ay \\
 &\therefore dx = a dy]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\pi}{\sin\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\pi\right)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\pi}{\cos\frac{n\pi}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} \sec\frac{n\pi}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 11.** Show that

$$(i) \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2n-1} \theta d\theta = \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{2\Gamma(m+n)}$$

$$(ii) \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^p \theta \cos^q \theta d\theta = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{q+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{p+q+2}{2}\right)}$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 (i) \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2n-1} \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \beta(m, n) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{\Gamma(m+n)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (ii) \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^p \theta \cos^q \theta d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)-1} \cos^{2\left(\frac{q+1}{2}\right)-1} \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \beta\left(\frac{p+1}{2}, \frac{q+1}{2}\right) \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{q+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2} + \frac{q+1}{2}\right)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{q+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{p+q+2}{2}\right)}$$

**Example 12.** Show that

$$2^p \Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{p+2}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(p+1).$$

**Solution :** By Duplication Formula, we know that

$$\Gamma p \Gamma\left(p + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(2p)}{2^{2p-1}}$$

Replacing  $p$  by  $\frac{p+1}{2}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{p+2}{2}\right) &= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma\left[2 \cdot \left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\right]}{2^{\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)-1}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(p+1)}{2^p} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow 2^p \Gamma\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{p+2}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(p+1)$$

**Example 13.** Prove that

$$\beta(m, n) = \beta(m+1, n) + \beta(m, n+1).$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{R.H.S.} &= \beta(m+1, n) + \beta(m, n+1) \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(m+1)\Gamma n}{\Gamma(m+1+n)} + \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma(n+1)}{\Gamma(m+n+1)} \\ &= \frac{m \Gamma m \Gamma n}{(m+n)\Gamma(m+n)} + \frac{\Gamma m n \Gamma n}{(m+n)\Gamma(m+n)} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{\Gamma(m+n)} \left[ \frac{m}{m+n} + \frac{n}{m+n} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{\Gamma m \Gamma n}{\Gamma(m+n)} \\
 &= \beta(m, n)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 14.** Prove that  $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^c}{c^x} dx = \frac{\Gamma(c+1)}{(\log c)^{c+1}}; c > 1.$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Let } I &= \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^c}{c^x} dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} x^c c^{-x} dx \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} x^c e^{-x \log_e c} dx \quad [\because c^{-x} = e^{-x \log_e c}] \\
 &\quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Put } x \log_e c = y \\ \therefore dx \log_e c = dy \\ \therefore dx = \frac{dy}{\log_e c} \end{array} \right. \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} \frac{y^c}{(\log_e c)^c} e^{-y} \frac{dy}{\log_e c} \\
 &= \frac{1}{(\log_e c)^{c+1}} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-y} y^c dy \\
 &= \frac{1}{(\log_e c)^{c+1}} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-y} y^{(c+1)-1} dy \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma(c+1)}{(\log_e c)^{c+1}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 15.** Evaluate

$$(i) \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^3(1-x^6)}{(1+x)^{24}} dx$$

$$(ii) \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^4(1+x^3)}{(1+x)^{15}} dx$$

**Solution :**

$$(i) \quad I = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^3(1-x^6)}{(1+x)^{24}} dx$$

Put  $n = 10$ , we get

$$\Gamma.1 \Gamma.2 \Gamma.3 \dots \Gamma.9 = \frac{(2\pi)^{5/2}}{\sqrt{10}}$$

**Example 17.** Show that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\sin x}} \times \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\sin x} \, dx = \pi.$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\sin x}} \times \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\sin x} \, dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{-1/2} x \, dx \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{1/2} x \, dx \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2(1/4)-1} x \cos^{2(1/2)-1} x \, dx \\ & \quad \times \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2(1/4)-1} x \cos^{2(1/2)-1} x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \beta\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{2} \beta\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{4} \Gamma \frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma \frac{3}{4} \Gamma \frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma \frac{3}{4}} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma \frac{3}{4} \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma \frac{5}{4}} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{4} \cdot \pi}{4 \Gamma \frac{5}{4}} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{4} \cdot \pi}{4 \cdot \frac{1}{4} \Gamma \frac{1}{4}} \\ &= \pi \end{aligned}$$



**Example 18.** Prove that

$$\int_0^1 \frac{x^2}{(1-x^4)^{1/2}} dx \cdot \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(1+x^4)^{1/2}} dx = \frac{\pi}{4\sqrt{2}}.$$

**Solution :**

$$I_1 = \int_0^1 \frac{x^2}{(1-x^4)^{1/2}} dx$$

$$[\text{Put } x^4 = \sin^2 \theta$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 = \sin \theta$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \sin^{1/2} \theta$$

$$\Rightarrow dx = \frac{1}{2} \sin^{-1/2} \theta \cos \theta d\theta]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I_1 &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin \theta \cdot \frac{1}{2} \sin^{-1/2} \theta \cos \theta d\theta}{\cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{1/2} \theta d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2(1/4)-1} \theta \cos^{2(1/2)-1} \theta d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} B\left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{\Gamma \frac{3}{4} \Gamma \frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\ &= \frac{\frac{1}{2} \Gamma \frac{3}{4} \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma \frac{5}{4}} \\ &= \frac{\frac{1}{4} \Gamma \frac{3}{4} \sqrt{\pi}}{\frac{1}{4} \Gamma \frac{1}{4}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma \frac{3}{4}}{\Gamma \frac{1}{4}} \end{aligned}$$

... (1)

$$I_2 = \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{(1+x^4)^{1/2}}$$

$$[\text{Put } x^4 = \tan^2 \phi$$

$$\therefore x^2 = \tan \phi$$

$$\therefore x = \tan^{1/2} \phi$$

$$\therefore dx = \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1/2} \phi \sec^2 \phi d\phi]$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1/2} \phi \sec^2 \phi d\phi}{\sec \phi}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{\sec \phi}{\sqrt{\tan \phi}} d\phi$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1}{\cos \phi \sqrt{\frac{\sin \phi}{\cos \phi}}} d\phi$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{d\phi}{\sqrt{\sin \phi \cos \phi}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{d\phi}{\sqrt{2 \sin \phi \cos \phi}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{d\phi}{\sqrt{\sin 2\phi}}$$

$$[\text{Put } 2\phi = \alpha$$

$$\therefore 2d\phi = d\alpha$$

$$\therefore d\phi = \frac{d\alpha}{2}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{d\alpha}{2 \sqrt{\sin \alpha}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{-1/2} \alpha d\alpha$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{(1/2)-1} \alpha \cos^{(1/2)-1} \alpha d\alpha$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{2} \beta\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{4} \Gamma\frac{1}{2}}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{4} \Gamma\frac{1}{2}}{2\Gamma\frac{3}{4}} \\
 &= \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4\sqrt{2}} \frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{4}}{\Gamma\frac{3}{4}} \quad \dots (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore I_1 \times I_2 &= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma\frac{3}{4}}{\Gamma\frac{1}{4}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma\frac{1}{4}}{4\sqrt{2} \Gamma\frac{3}{4}} \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4\sqrt{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 19.** Show that

$$\int_0^1 \frac{x^{m-1} + x^{n-1}}{(1+x)^{m+n}} dx = \beta(m, n).$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 \frac{x^{m-1} + x^{n-1}}{(1+x)^{m+n}} dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 \frac{x^{m-1}}{(1+x)^{m+n}} dx + \int_0^1 \frac{x^{n-1}}{(1+x)^{m+n}} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

In the second integral.

Put  $x = \frac{1}{y}$

$$\therefore dx = -\frac{1}{y^2} dy$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{3} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{1/2} \theta \cos^{1/2} \theta \, d\theta \\
&= \frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{2} B\left(\frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{6} \frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{6} \Gamma\frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\
&= \frac{1}{6} \frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{6} \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma\frac{2}{3}} \\
&= \frac{1}{6} \cdot \frac{2^{1/6} \sqrt{3} \left(\Gamma\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \sqrt{\pi}}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma\frac{2}{3}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6 \cdot 2^{1/6}} \frac{\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \Gamma\frac{1}{3}}{\Gamma\frac{2}{3} \Gamma\frac{1}{3}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6 \cdot 2^{1/6}} \frac{\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{3}\right)^3}{\Gamma\left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \Gamma\frac{1}{3}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6 \cdot 2^{1/6}} \frac{\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{3}\right)^3}{\frac{\pi}{\sin \pi/3}} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{3} \left(\Gamma\frac{1}{3}\right)^3 \cdot \sqrt{3}}{6 \cdot 2^{1/6} \pi \cdot 2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\left(\Gamma \frac{1}{3}\right)^3}{2^{1/3} \pi}$$

Again

$$I_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^3}}$$

[Put  $x^3 = \sin^2 \theta$  $\therefore x = \sin^{2/3} \theta$ 

$$\therefore dx = \frac{2}{3} \sin^{-1/3} \theta \cos \theta d\theta]$$

 $\therefore$ 

$$I_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\frac{2}{3} \sin^{-1/3} \theta \cos \theta d\theta}{\cos \theta}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{-1/3} \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2(1/3)-1} \theta \cos^{2(1/2)-1} \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \frac{1}{2} B\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}} \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{3} \Gamma \frac{1}{2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{2}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2\sqrt{3}} \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{3} \Gamma \frac{1}{6}}{\Gamma \frac{5}{6} \Gamma \frac{1}{6}}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2\sqrt{3}} \frac{\Gamma \frac{1}{3} 2^{-1/3} \sqrt{3} \left(\Gamma \frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{\left[\Gamma\left(1 - \frac{1}{6}\right) \Gamma \frac{1}{6}\right] \sqrt{\pi}}$$

$$= \frac{\left(\Gamma \frac{1}{2}\right)^3}{2^{1/3} \frac{\pi}{\sin \pi/6}}$$

6. Prove that

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2} + x\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2} - x\right) = \left(\frac{1}{4} - x^2\right) \pi \sec \pi x; -1 < 2x < 1$$

7. Prove that

$$\frac{\Gamma\frac{1}{3} \Gamma\frac{5}{6}}{\Gamma\frac{2}{3}} = \sqrt{\pi} 2^{1/3}$$

8. Prove that

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(l, m) \beta(l + m, n) &= \beta(m, n) \beta(m + n, l) \\ &= \beta(n, l) \beta(n + l, m) \end{aligned}$$

9. Prove that

$$\beta(l, m) \beta(l + m, n) \beta(l + m + n, p) = \frac{\Gamma l \Gamma m \Gamma n \Gamma p}{\Gamma(l + m + n + p)}$$

10. Prove that

$$\beta(l, m) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 [x^{l-1} (1-x)^{m-1} + x^{m-1} (1-x)^{l-1}] dx$$

11. Prove that

$$\int_0^p x^m (p^q - x^q)^n dx = \frac{p^{m+m+1}}{q} \cdot \beta\left(n+1, \frac{m+1}{q}\right)$$

12. Prove that

$$\int_0^a (a-x)^{m-1} x^{n-1} dx = a^{m+n-1} \beta(m, n)$$

13. Prove that

$$\int_0^a \left(1 - \frac{x}{n}\right)^n x^{l-1} dx = n^l \beta(l, n+1)$$

14. Prove that

$$\int_a^b (x-a)^{m-1} (b-x)^{n-1} dx = (b-a)^{m+n-1} \beta(m, n)$$

15. Prove that

$$(a) \int_0^\infty x^2 e^{-x^2} dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4}$$

$$(b) \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-st}}{\sqrt{t}} dt = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{s}}, s > 0$$

$$(c) \int_0^{\infty} 4x^4 e^{-x^4} dx = \Gamma \frac{5}{4}$$

$$(d) \int_0^{\infty} x^4 e^{-2x} dx = \frac{45}{8}$$

$$(e) \int_0^{\infty} x^3 e^{-x} dx = 120$$

16. Prove that

$$\Gamma n = \int_0^1 \left( \log \frac{1}{x} \right)^{n-1} dx, n > 0$$

17. Prove that

$$\int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\log x}} dx = \sqrt{\pi}$$

18. Prove that

$$\int_0^1 x^{n-1} \left( \log \frac{1}{x} \right)^{m-1} dx = \frac{\Gamma m}{n^m}, m, n > 0$$

19. Prove that

$$\int_0^1 (1-x^n)^{1/n} dx = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\left( \Gamma \frac{1}{2} \right)^2}{2\Gamma \left( \frac{2}{n} \right)}$$

20. Prove that

$$\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^n}} = \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma \left( \frac{1}{n} \right)}{n \Gamma \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{n} \right)}$$

21. Prove that

$$(a) \int_0^2 (4-x^2)^{3/2} dx = 3\pi$$

$$(b) \int_0^3 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{3x-x^2}} = \pi$$

$$(c) \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x dx}{1+x^6} = \frac{\pi}{3\sqrt{3}}$$

$$(d) \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^2 dx}{1+x^4} = \frac{\pi}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

$$(e) \int_0^2 \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{1-x^3}} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$(f) \int_0^1 x^2 (1-x)^3 dx = \frac{1}{60}$$

22. Prove that

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\tan \theta} \, d\theta &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\cot \theta} \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{2}}\end{aligned}$$

23. Prove that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{a \cos^4 \theta + b \sin^4 \theta}} = \frac{\left(\Gamma \frac{1}{4}\right)^2}{4(ab)^{\frac{1}{4}} \sqrt{\pi}}$$

[Hint: Put  $\tan \theta = x$  and then  $bx^4 = ay$ ]

24. Prove that

$$(a) \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cos \frac{\pi x^2}{2} = 1$$

$$(b) \quad \int_0^{\infty} \cos x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}$$

25. Show that if  $n > -1$ ,

$$\int_0^{\infty} x^n e^{-x^2} \, dx = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)}{2a^{n+1}}$$

Hence or otherwise show that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-a^2 x^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{a}.$$

26. Prove that

$$\beta(m, n) = a^m b^n \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^{m+n-1}}{(ax+b)^{m+n}} \, dx$$

and deduce that

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^{2m-1} \theta \cos^{2n-1} \theta}{(a \sin^2 \theta + b \cos^2 \theta)^{m+n}} \, d\theta = \frac{\beta(m, n)}{2a^m b^n}$$

$$\left[ \text{Hint: } \beta(m, n) = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{y^{m+n-1}}{(1+y)^{m+n}} \, dy, \text{ put } y = \frac{ax}{b} \right]$$



27. Prove that

$$\Gamma x \Gamma(1-x) = \pi \operatorname{cosec}(\pi x); 0 < x < 1$$

and deduce that

$$\int_0^1 \log \Gamma x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \log 2\pi$$

$$\left[ \text{Hint: } I = \int_0^1 \log \Gamma x \, dx, \text{ then } I = \int_0^1 \log \Gamma(1-x) \, dx \right]$$

$$\therefore I = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (\log \Gamma x + \log \Gamma(1-x)) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 \log \frac{\pi}{\sin \pi x} \, dx$$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 12.1

1. (a)  $\frac{1}{2} \beta\left(\frac{m+1}{2}, n+1\right)$

(b)  $\frac{1}{5} \beta\left(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$

(c)  $\frac{1}{3} \beta\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\right)$

# 13

## Determination of Areas (Quadrature)

### 13.1 Quadrature (Definition)

The process of finding the area bounded by a given curve is called Quadrature.

### 13.2 Area Formula for Cartesian Equations

To prove that the area bounded by the curve  $y = f(x)$ , the  $x$ -axis and ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  is

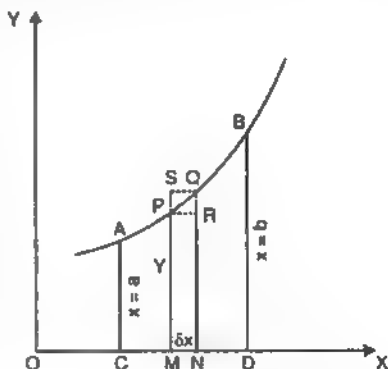
$$\int_a^b y \, dx$$

where  $y = f(x)$  is a continuous single-valued function and  $y$  does not change sign in the interval  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

Let  $y = f(x)$  be the equation of curve  $AB$ . Let  $CA$  and  $CD$  be two ordinates at  $x = a$  and  $x = b$  respectively.

Suppose  $y$  is an increasing function of  $x$  in the interval  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve and  $Q(x + \delta x, y + \delta y)$  be a neighbouring point on it. Draw their ordinates  $PM$ ,  $QN$ . As  $x$  changes, the area  $ACMP$  also changes and hence is clearly a function of  $x$ .



Let  $A$  denote the area  $ACMP$ , then the area

$$ACNQ = A + \delta A$$

so that area  $PMNQ = \delta A$ .

Complete the rectangle  $PRQS$ . Then the area  $PRQS$  lies between the areas of the rectangles  $PMNR$  and  $SMNQ$ , i.e.  $\delta A$  lies between  $y\delta x$  and  $(y + \delta y)\delta x$ .

Dividing throughout by  $\delta x$ ,  $\frac{\delta A}{\delta x}$  lies between  $y$  and  $y + \delta y$ .

In the limiting position, when  $Q \rightarrow P$ ,  $\delta x \rightarrow 0$  and  $\delta y \rightarrow 0$ .

$\therefore \lim_{\delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\delta A}{\delta x}$  lies between  $y$  and  $\lim_{\delta y \rightarrow 0} (y + \delta y)$ .

$\therefore \frac{dA}{dx}$  lies between  $y$  and a quantity which tends to  $y$ .

$\therefore \frac{dA}{dx} = y$

Integrating both sides w.r.t.  $x$  from  $x = a$  to  $x = b$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b y \, dx &= \int_a^b \frac{dA}{dx} \, dx \\ &= [A]_a^b \\ &= (\text{value of } A \text{ when } x = b) \\ &\quad - (\text{value of } A \text{ when } x = a) \\ &= \text{area } ACDB - 0 \\ &= \text{area } ACDB \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\text{area } ACDB = \int_a^b y \, dx$$

**Note 1.** The area bounded by the curve  $AB$ , the ordinates at  $A$  and  $B$ , and the  $x$ -axis is often called 'the area under the curve  $AB$ '.

**Note 2.** *Sign of the area.* We know that if  $y = f(x) > 0$  over the range  $a \leq x \leq b$ , then the area  $\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$  is +ve and if  $y = f(x) < 0$  in the range  $a \leq x \leq b$ , then the area  $\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$  is -ve. The curve  $y = f(x)$  in this case lies below the  $x$ -axis over the range  $a \leq x \leq b$ . Thus we consider the areas below the  $x$ -axis as -ve.

By the area in such cases, we mean the numerical value of the

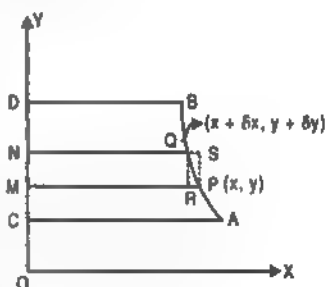


### 13.3 To prove that the area of the curve $x = f(y)$ between $y$ -axis and the lines $y = c, y = d$ is given by

$$\int_c^d x \, dy$$

Let  $x = f(y)$  be the equation of curve  $AB$ . Let  $CA, DB$  be the abscissae at  $y = c, y = d$  respectively.

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve and let  $Q(x + \delta x, y + \delta y)$  be a neighbouring point on it.



Draw  $PM, QN \perp$  on  $y$ -axis from  $P$  and  $Q$ .

As  $y$  changes, the area  $ACMP$  also changes and hence is clearly a function of  $y$ . Let  $A$  denote the area  $ACMP$  and  $A + \delta A$  denote the area  $ACNQ$ , so that

$$\text{area } PMNQ = \delta A$$

Complete the rectangle  $PRQS$ . Then the area  $PRQS$  lies between the areas of the rectangles  $PMNQ$  and  $PMNS$ , i.e.  $\delta A$  lies between  $x\delta y$  and  $(x + \delta x)\delta y$ .

Dividing throughout by  $\delta y$ , we have

$$\frac{\delta A}{\delta y} \text{ lies between } x \text{ and } x + \delta x.$$

In the limiting position, when  $Q \rightarrow P$ , then  $\delta x \rightarrow 0, \delta y \rightarrow 0$ .

$$\therefore \lim_{\delta y \rightarrow 0} \frac{\delta A}{\delta y} \text{ lies between } x \text{ and } \lim_{\delta x \rightarrow 0} (x + \delta x).$$

$$\text{i.e., } \frac{dA}{dy} \text{ lies between } x \text{ and a quantity which tends to } x.$$

$$\therefore \frac{dA}{dy} = x.$$

Integrating both sides between the limits  $c$  to  $d$ , we have

$$\int_c^d x \, dy = \int_c^d \frac{dA}{dy} \, dy = [A]_c^d$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 32a^2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 \theta \cos^2 \theta d\theta \\
 &= 32a^2 \frac{\Gamma \frac{5}{2} \Gamma \frac{3}{2}}{2 \Gamma 4} \\
 &= 32a^2 \frac{\frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} \\
 &= \pi a^2
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.** Find the area of the curve  $y^2 (2a - x) = x^3$  between the curve and its asymptotes.

**Solution :** The equation of the curve is

$$y^2 (2a - x) = x^3 \quad \dots (1)$$

to trace the curve roughly to find the limits of integration.

- (i) The curve is symmetrical about  $x$ -axis.
- (ii) The curve passes through the origin.
- (iii) The tangents at the origin are  $y^2 = 0$  or  $y = 0$ ,  $y = 0$  i.e. origin is a cusp.
- (iv) The curve meets the  $x$ -axis at the origin only.
- (v) The equation of asymptote is  $x = 2a$ .
- (vi) The equation of the curve can be written as

$$y^2 = \frac{x^3}{2a - x}$$

which shows that for the values of  $x > 2a$ ,  $y$  is imaginary i.e., the curve does not exist for values of  $x > 2a$ .

Similarly the curve does not exist for negative values of  $x$ .

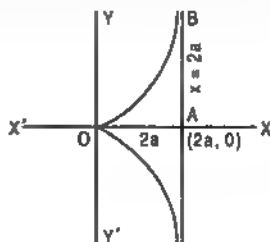
- (vii) Also as  $x \rightarrow a$ ,  $y \rightarrow \infty$ .

Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

Hence, required area

$$= 2 \text{ Area } OAB$$

$$= 2 \int_0^{2a} y dx$$



Hence the parabola meets the  $x$ -axis at  $O(0, 0)$  and  $A(2, 0)$ .  
Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Required Area} &= \int_0^2 y \, dx \\ &= \int_0^2 (2x - x^2) \, dx \\ &= \left( \frac{2x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} \right)_0^2 \\ &= 4 - \frac{8}{3} = \frac{4}{3}\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Show that the area cut-off a parabola by any double ordinate is two-thirds of the corresponding rectangle contained by the double ordinate and its distance from the vertex.

**Solution :** Let the equation of the parabola be

$$y^2 = 4ax \quad \dots (1)$$

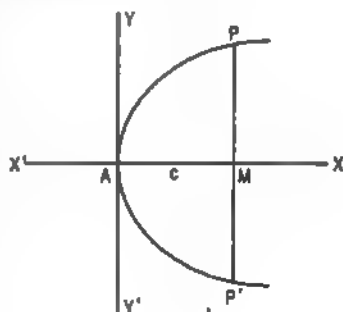
and that of the double ordinate  $PP'$  be  $x = c$ .

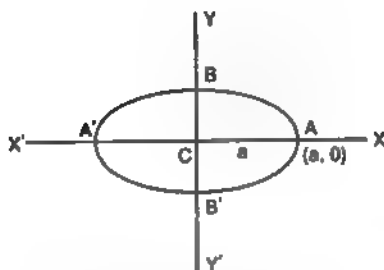
The curve is symmetrical about the  $x$ -axis and for the part of the curve above the  $x$ -axis (taking +ve sign before the square root) from (1), we have

$$y = \sqrt{4ax}$$

$\therefore$  Area cut-off the parabola by the double ordinate  $PMP'$

$$\begin{aligned}&= \text{Area } PAP' \\ &= 2 \text{ Area } PAM \\ &= 2 \int_0^c y \, dx \\ &= 2 \int_0^c \sqrt{4ax} \, dx \\ &= 2 \int_0^c 2\sqrt{a} \sqrt{x} \, dx\end{aligned}$$





Now, for the area  $CAB$ ,  $x$  varies from 0 to  $a$  and from (1),

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = \frac{a^2 - x^2}{a^2}$$

$$\therefore y = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \quad [\text{Taking +ve sign before the radical}]$$

$$\therefore \text{Area } CAB = \int_0^a y \, dx$$

$$= \int_0^a \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \, dx$$

$$= \frac{b}{a} \left[ \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{1}{2} a^2 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \right]_0^a$$

$$= \frac{b}{a} \left[ 0 + \frac{a^2}{2} \sin^{-1}(1) - 0 - 0 \right]$$

$$= \frac{b}{a} \cdot \frac{a^2}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$= \frac{\pi ab}{4}$$

$$\left[ \because \sin^{-1}(1) = \frac{\pi}{2} \right]$$

$\therefore$  Whole area of the ellipse

$$= 4 \text{ area } CAB$$

$$= 4 \left( \frac{\pi ab}{4} \right)$$

$$= \pi ab$$

**Example 6.** Find the whole area of the astroid

$$x^{2n} + y^{2n} = a^{2n}$$

**Solution :**

The equation of the astroid is

$$x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3} \quad \dots (1)$$

to trace the curve roughly to find the limits of integration.

- (i) The curve is symmetrical about both the axes.
- (ii) The curve does not pass through the origin.
- (iii) The curve meets the  $x$ -axis where  $y = 0$ , hence putting  $y = 0$  in (1), we get

$$x^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$$

or  $x^2 = a^2$

$\therefore x = \pm a$

i.e. the points of intersection with  $x$ -axis are  $(a, 0)$ ,  $(-a, 0)$ .

Similarly the curve meets the  $y$ -axis in the points

$$(0, a), (0, -a)$$

(iv) from (1)

$$y^{2/3} = a^{2/3} - x^{2/3} \quad \dots (2)$$

Now if  $|x| > a$

$$y^{2/3} \text{ is } -ve$$

$\therefore y^2 \text{ is also } -ve$

and hence  $y$  is imaginary.

$\therefore$  There lies no portion of the curve beyond the lines  $x = \pm a$ .

Similarly, there lies no portion of the curve beyond the lines  $y = \pm a$ .

From (2), when  $x = 0$ ,  $y = a$  and as  $x$  increases from 0 to  $a$ ,  $y$  decreases from  $a$  to 0.

Hence the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

Since the curve is symmetrical about both the axes,

$\therefore$  Whole area of the curve

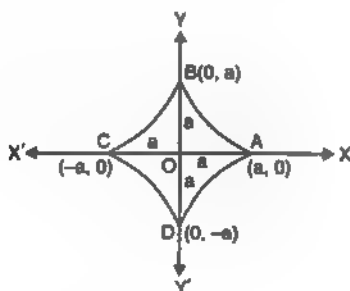
$$= 4 \times \text{Area under the curve in the first quadrant.}$$

i.e., Area  $ABCD$

$$= 4 \times \text{Area } OAB.$$



Now for the area  $OAB$ , i.e., area under the curve in the first quadrant,  $x$  varies from 0 to  $a$ .



Now, from (1),  $y^{2/3} = a^{2/3} - x^{2/3}$

$$\therefore y = (a^{2/3} - x^{2/3})^{3/2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Area } OAB &= \int_0^a y \, dx \\ &= \int_0^a (a^{2/3} - x^{2/3})^{3/2} \, dx\end{aligned}$$

[Put  $x = a \sin^3 \theta$

$$\therefore dx = 3a \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta$$

when  $x = 0$ ,  $\theta = 0$

when  $x = a$ ,  $\theta = \pi/2$ ]

$$= \int_0^{\pi/2} (a^{2/3} - a^{2/3} \sin^2 \theta)^{3/2} 3a \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi/2} a (1 - \sin^2 \theta)^{3/2} 3a \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta \, d\theta$$

$$= 3a^2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 \theta \cos^4 \theta \, d\theta$$

$$= 3a^2 \frac{\Gamma \frac{3}{2} \Gamma \frac{5}{2}}{2\Gamma 4}$$

$$= \frac{3a^2}{2} \cdot \frac{\frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2a^2 \int_{-\pi/2}^0 \frac{\sin \theta \cos \theta (1 + \sin \theta)}{\cos \theta} d\theta \\
&= 2a^2 \int_{-\pi/2}^0 \sin \theta (1 + \sin \theta) d\theta \\
&= 2a^2 \int_{-\pi/2}^0 \left[ \sin \theta + \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2} \right] d\theta \\
&= 2a^2 \left[ -\cos \theta + \frac{1}{2} \left( \theta - \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right) \right]_{-\pi/2}^0 \\
&= 2a^2 \left[ \left\{ -\cos 0 + \frac{1}{2} (0 - 0) \right\} - \left\{ -\cos \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right. \right. \\
&\quad \left. \left. + \frac{1}{2} \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\sin (-\pi)}{2} \right) \right\} \right] \\
&= 2a^2 \left[ (-1) - \left\{ -\frac{\pi}{4} \right\} \right] \\
&= 2a^2 \left[ -1 + \frac{\pi}{4} \right] \\
&= \frac{2a^2 (\pi - 4)}{4} \\
&= \frac{a^2 (4 - \pi)}{2} \text{ numerically} \quad [\because \pi < 4]
\end{aligned}$$

Hence the area of the loop is  $\frac{a^2}{2} (4 - \pi)$ .

**Example 8.** Find the area of the curve

$$x^2 (x^2 + y^2) = a^2 (y^2 - x^2)$$

between the curve and its asymptotes.

**Solution :** The equation of the curve is

$$x^2 (x^2 + y^2) = a^2 (y^2 - x^2) \quad \dots (1)$$

to trace the curve roughly to find the limits of integration.

(i) The curve is symmetrical about both the axes.

(ii) The curve passes through the origin and the tangents at the origin are given by  $y^2 - x^2 = 0$  or  $y = \pm x$ . The tangents being real and different, origin is a node.

(iii) The curve meets the  $x$ -axis and  $y$ -axis both only at the origin.

(iv) Equating to zero, the coefficient of  $y^2$  in (1), the asymptotes parallel to  $y$ -axis are given by

$$x^2 - a^2 = 0$$

$$\text{or, } x = \pm a$$

The curve has no other asymptotes.

(v) From (1),

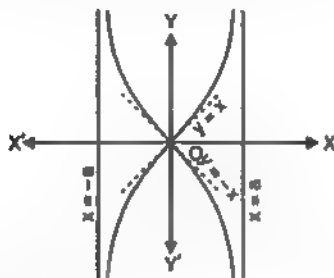
$$y^2 (a^2 - x^2) = x^2 (x^2 + a^2)$$

$$\therefore y = x \sqrt{\frac{a^2 + x^2}{a^2 - x^2}} \quad \dots (2)$$

When  $|x| > a$ ,  $y$  is imaginary.

$\therefore$  No portion of the curve lies beyond the lines  $x = \pm a$ . As  $x$  increases from 0 to  $a$ ,  $y$  increases from 0 to  $\infty$ .

Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.



By symmetry, required area between the curve and its asymptotes  
 $= 4 \times$  Area between the curve in first quadrant  
 and its asymptotes

$$= 4 \int_0^a y \, dx$$

- (iii) The curve meets  $x$ -axis in the point  $(0, 0)$  and  $(3a, 0)$  and  $y$ -axis at  $(0, 0)$ .

Shifting origin to the point  $(3a, 0)$ , the equation (1) transforms to

$$y^2 (a + 3a + x) = (x + 3a)^2 (3a - x - 3a)$$

$$\text{or} \quad y^2 (x + 4a) = -x (x + 3a)^2$$

$\therefore$  The tangent at the new origin is  $x = 0$ , i.e., the new  $y$ -axis [Equating lowest degree terms to zero].

Hence at the point  $(3a, 0)$ , the tangent to the curve is parallel to  $y$ -axis.

- (iv) Equating to zero the coefficient of  $y^2$  in (1), the asymptote parallel to  $y$ -axis is given by

$$x + a = 0$$

There is no other asymptote of the curve.

- (v) From (1),

$$y = x \sqrt{\frac{3a-x}{a+x}} \quad \dots (2)$$

[Taking +ve sign before the radical]

When  $x > 3a$  or when  $x < -a$ ,  $y$  is imaginary.

Thus the curve does not lie beyond the lines  $x = -a$ ,  $x = 3a$ .

As  $x$  increases from 0 to  $3a$ ,  $y$  first increases and then decreases to 0.

Thus there is a loop between  $x = 0$ ,  $x = 3a$ .

Again, as  $x$  decreases from 0 to  $a$ ,  $y$  also decreases from 0 to  $-\infty$ .

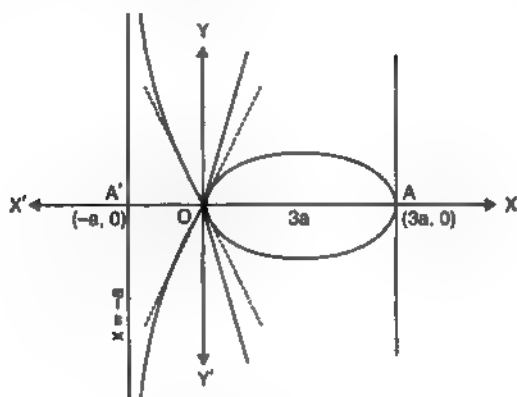
Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

For the loop of the curve  $x$  varies from 0 to  $3a$  and for the area of the curve between the curve and the asymptotes,  $x$  varies from  $-a$  to 0.

$\therefore$  Area of the loop

$$= 2 \times \text{Area of the upper half of the loop}$$

$$= 2 \int_0^{3a} y \, dx$$



$$= 2 \int_0^{3a} x \sqrt{\frac{3a-x}{a+x}} dx \quad [\text{From (2)}]$$

$$= 2 \int_0^{3a} x \sqrt{\frac{2a+(a-x)}{2a-(a-x)}} dx$$

[Put  $a-x = 2a \cos \theta$

$\therefore dx = 2a \sin \theta d\theta$

when  $x = 0$ ,  $\theta = \pi/3$ ;

when  $x = 3a$ ,  $\theta = \pi$ ]

$$= 2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (a - 2a \cos \theta) \sqrt{\frac{2a + 2a \cos \theta}{2a - 2a \cos \theta}} 2a \sin \theta d\theta$$

$$= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (2 - 2 \cos \theta) \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \theta}{1 - \cos \theta}} \sin \theta d\theta$$

$$= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (1 - \cos \theta) \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \theta}{1 - \cos \theta}} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \theta}{1 + \cos \theta}} \sin \theta d\theta$$

$$= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (1 - 2 \cos \theta) \frac{1 + \cos \theta}{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \theta}} \sin \theta d\theta$$

$$= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (1 - 2 \cos \theta) (1 + \cos \theta) d\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (1 - \cos \theta - 2 \cos^2 \theta) d\theta \\
&= 4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} [1 - \cos \theta - (1 + \cos 2\theta)] d\theta \\
&= -4a^2 \int_{\pi/3}^{\pi} (\cos 2\theta + \cos \theta) d\theta \\
&= -4a^2 \left[ \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} + \sin \theta \right]_{\pi/3}^{\pi} \\
&= -4a^2 \left[ 0 - \left( \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} + \sin \frac{\pi}{3} \right) \right] \\
&= 4a^2 \left[ \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right] = 3\sqrt{3} a^2 \quad \dots (3)
\end{aligned}$$

Again, the area between the curve and its asymptotes

= 2 × area between the curve and its asymptotes  
above the x-axis

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2 \int_{-a}^0 y dx \\
&= 2 \int_{-a}^0 x \sqrt{\frac{3a-x}{a+x}} dx \quad [\text{From (2)}]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2 \int_{-a}^0 x \sqrt{\frac{2a+(a-x)}{2a-(a-x)}} dx \\
&\quad [\text{Put } a-x = 2a \cos \theta \\
&\quad \therefore dx = 2a \sin \theta d\theta \\
&\quad \text{when } x = -a, \theta = 0 \\
&\quad \text{when } x = 0, \theta = \pi/3]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2 \int_0^{\pi/3} (a - 2a \cos \theta) \sqrt{\frac{2a(1+\cos \theta)}{2a(1-\cos \theta)}} \cdot 2a \sin \theta d\theta \\
&= 4a^2 \int_0^{\pi/3} (1 - 2 \cos \theta) \frac{1 + \cos \theta}{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 \theta}} \sin \theta d\theta \\
&= 4a^2 \int_0^{\pi/3} (1 - 2 \cos \theta) (1 + \cos \theta) d\theta
\end{aligned}$$

or  $y = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}$  ... (1)

[Taking +ve sign with the square root]

Now,  $S = \text{Sectorial Area } OPA$   
 $= \text{Area } OMP - \text{area } AMP$  ... (2)

But,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area } OMP &= \frac{1}{2} OM \cdot MP \\ &= \frac{1}{2} x \cdot y \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \end{aligned} \quad \dots (3)$$

and,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area } AMP &= \int_a^x y \, dx \\ &= \int_a^x \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \, dx \quad [\because OA = a] \\ &= \frac{b}{a} \left[ \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - \frac{1}{2} a^2 \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \right]_a^x \\ &= \frac{b}{2a} \left[ x \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - a^2 \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \right] \\ &\quad [\because \cosh^{-1}(1) = 0] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  From (2),

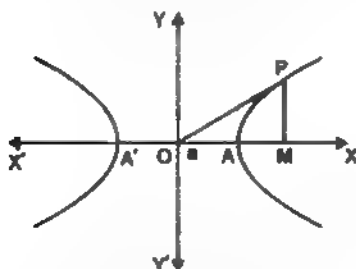
$$\begin{aligned} S &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{b}{a} x \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - \frac{b}{2a} \\ &\quad \left[ x \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - a^2 \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{ab}{2} \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{a} \right) = \frac{2S}{ab}$$

$$\therefore x = a \cosh \left( \frac{2S}{ab} \right)$$

and from (1),

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \\ &= \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 \left( \cosh^2 \frac{2S}{ab} - 1 \right)} \\ &= \frac{b}{a} \cdot a \sinh \left( \frac{2S}{ab} \right) = b \sinh \frac{2S}{ab} \end{aligned}$$



### EXERCISE 13.1

- Find the area enclosed by the curve  $y = 3x - x^2$ ,  $x$ -axis and the lines  $x = 0$  and  $x = 3$ .
- Find the area enclosed by the curve  $y^2 = x$  and the straight line  $x = 4$ .
- Find the area bounded by the parabola  $y = 2x - x^2$  and  $x$ -axis.
- Find the area bounded by the curve  $y = c \cosh x/c$ ,  $x$ -axis and the ordinates  $x = 0$ ,  $x = a$ .
- Find the areas bounded by the  $x$ -axis, the following curves and the specified ordinates:
  - $y = e^x$ ;  $x = c$ ,  $x = d$
  - $y = \log x$ ;  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  ( $b > a > 1$ )
  - $y = \sin^2 x$ ;  $x = 0$ ,  $x = \pi/2$
  - $xy = k^2$ ;  $x = c$ ,  $x = d$
  - $y = xe^{x^2}$ ;  $x = 0$ ,  $x = a$
  - $y = 5 + \frac{x^2}{10}$ ;  $x = 2$ ,  $x = 10$ .



6. Find the whole area of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .
7. Find the whole area of the curve  $y^2 = x^2 (4 - x^2)$ .
8. Find the whole area of the curve  $a^2 y^2 = x^2 (a^2 - x^2)$ .
9. Find the whole area of the curve  $a^2 y^2 = x^2 (2a - x)$ .
10. Find the whole area of the curve  $a^2 x^2 = y^2 (2a - y)$ .
11. Find the area of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  bounded by its latus rectum, and find its ratio with the area of the circle of radius  $a$ .
12. Find the area of the loop of the following curves :
  - (a)  $y^2 = (x - 2)(x - 4)^2$
  - (b)  $x(x^2 + y^2) = a(x^2 - y^2)$
  - (c)  $a^2 y^2 = x^4(b + x)$
  - (d)  $ay^2 = x^2(a - x)$
  - (e)  $y^2 = x^4(a + x)$
  - (f)  $ay^2 = (x - a)(x - 5a)^2$
  - (g)  $3ay^2 = x(x - a)^2$
13. Find the area between the following curves and their asymptotes :
  - (a)  $x^2 y^2 = a^2(y^2 - x^2)$
  - (b)  $x(x^2 + y^2) = a(x^2 - y^2)$
  - (c)  $y^2(a - x) = x^3$
  - (d)  $xy^2 = 4a^2(2a - x)$
14. Trace the curve  $a^4 y^2 = x^3(2a - x)$  and prove that its area to the area of a circle of radius  $a$  is 5 : 4.
15. Show that the ordinate  $x = a$  divides the area between  $y^2(2a - x) = x^3$  and its asymptotes in the ratio  $3\pi - 8 : 3\pi + 8$ .
16. In the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , prove that  $x = a \cos h \frac{2S}{ab}$ ,  
 $y = b \sin h \frac{2S}{ab}$  where  $S$  is the sectorial area bounded by the ellipse,  $x$ -axis and the line joining  $(0, 0)$  to  $(x, y)$ .

**ANSWERS****EXERCISE 13.1**

1.  $\frac{9}{2}$
2.  $\frac{32}{3}$
3.  $\frac{4}{3}$
4.  $c^2 \sinh\left(\frac{a}{c}\right)$
5. (a)  $e^d - e^c$
- (b)  $b \log\left(\frac{b}{e}\right) - a \log\left(\frac{a}{e}\right)$
- (c)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
- (d)  $k^2 \log \frac{d}{c}$
- (e)  $\frac{1}{2}(e^{a^2} - 1)$
- (f)  $\frac{1096}{15}$
6.  $\pi a^2$
7.  $\frac{32}{3}$
8.  $\frac{4a^2}{3}$
9.  $\pi a^2$
10.  $\pi a^2$
11.  $\frac{8}{3}a^2 2^{\frac{1}{2}}, \frac{8}{3\pi} \cdot 2^{\frac{1}{2}}$
12. (a)  $\frac{32\sqrt{2}}{15}$
- (b)  $\frac{a^2}{2}(4 - \pi)$
- (c)  $\frac{32}{105}b^{\frac{1}{2}}a^{-\frac{1}{2}}$
- (d)  $\frac{8a^2}{15}$
- (e)  $\frac{32}{105}a^{\frac{3}{2}}$
- (f)  $\frac{256}{15}a^2$
- (g)  $\frac{8a^2}{15\sqrt{3}}$
13. (a)  $4a^2$
- (b)  $\frac{a^2}{2}(\pi + 4)$
- (c)  $\frac{3}{4}\pi a^2$
- (d)  $4\pi a^2$

**13.4 Area between Two Curves**

The area bounded by the curves  $y = f(x)$ ,  $y = \phi(x)$  and the ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  is

$$\int_a^b (y \text{ of upper curve} - y \text{ of lower curve}) dx$$

Let  $APB$ ,  $AQB$  be the curves

$$y = f(x), y = \phi(x)$$

respectively and  $MA$ ,  $NB$  be the ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$ .

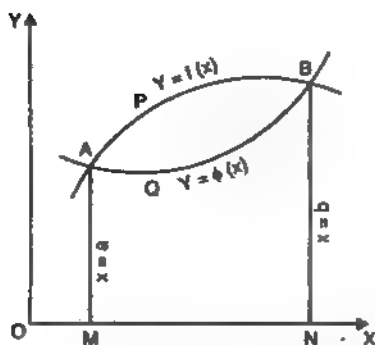
$\therefore$  Area  $APBQ$  between the two curves

$$= \text{Area } AMNBP - \text{Area } AMNBQ$$

$$= \int_a^b f(x) dx - \int_a^b \phi(x) dx$$

$$= \int_a^b [f(x) - \phi(x)] dx$$

$$= \int_a^b [y \text{ of upper curve} - y \text{ of lower curve}] dx$$



### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Prove that the area common to the two parabolas

$$x^2 = 4ay \text{ and } y^2 = 4ax \text{ is } \frac{16a^2}{3}.$$

**Solution :** The equations of the two parabolas are

$$x^2 = 4ay \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{and } y^2 = 4ax \quad \dots (2)$$

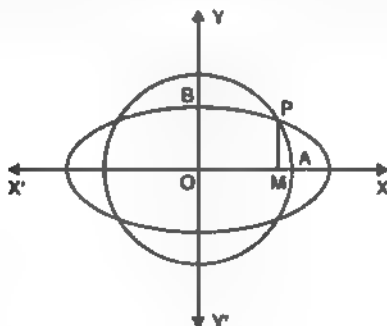
Both the parabolas have their vertices at the origin. Their axes are along  $OY$  and  $OX$  respectively.

Solving (1) and (2) [eliminating  $y$  from these], we have

$$\frac{x^4}{16a^2} = 4ax$$

**Example 2.** Find the area common to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$  and the ellipse  $x^2 + 4y^2 = 9$ .

**Solution :** Let  $P$  be the point of intersection in the first quadrant, of the circle and the ellipse, as shown in the figure. Draw  $MP \perp x$ -axis.



Eliminating  $y^2$  from the two equations of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$  and the ellipse  $x^2 + 4y^2 = 9$ , we have

$$x^2 + 4(4 - x^2) = 9$$

$$\text{or,} \quad 3x^2 = 7$$

which gives

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{7}{3}} \text{ for } P$$

[Rejecting -ve value, as  $P$  is in the first quadrant]

Now for the ellipse

$$y = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{9 - x^2}$$

and for the circle

$$y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$$

Since the ellipse and circle are both symmetrical about both the axes.

$\therefore$  Required area common to the circle and ellipse

$$= 4 \times \text{Area common to circle and ellipse in the first quadrant}$$

$$= 4 \times \text{Area } OAPB$$

**Solution :** The equation of the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 = 64a^2 \quad \dots (1)$$

Its centre is  $(0, 0)$  and radius is  $8a$ .

The equations of the parabola is

$$y^2 = 12ax \quad \dots (2)$$

Its vertex is  $(0, 0)$  and latus rectum is  $12a$ .

To find the points of intersection of (1) and (2),

eliminating  $y^2$  from (1) and (2), we get

$$x^2 + 12ax = 64a^2$$

$$\text{or } x^2 + 12ax - 64a^2 = 0$$

$$\text{or } (x + 16a)(x - 4a) = 0$$

$$\text{or } x = -16a, 4a$$

But  $x = -16a$  is inadmissible because when  $x = -16a$ , from (2),  $y$  is imaginary.

$\therefore x = 4a$ , gives the abscissa of  $C$ , the point of intersection.

If the circle meets the  $x$ -axis in the points  $A$  and  $A'$ , then these points are  $A(8a, 0)$  and  $A'(-8a, 0)$ .

$\therefore$  Required shaded area

$$= \text{Area of circle} - \text{Area of } COC'A \quad \dots (3)$$

Now, area of circle

$$= \pi (8a)^2$$

$$= 64\pi a^2 \quad \dots (4)$$

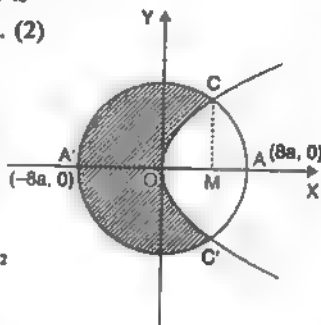
and

$$\text{area } COC'A = 2 \text{ Area } COA$$

$$= 2 (\text{Area } COM + \text{Area } MCA)$$

$$= 2 \left[ \int_0^{4a} (y \text{ of parabola}) dx + \int_{4a}^{8a} (y \text{ of circle}) dx \right]$$

$$= 2 \left[ \int_0^{4a} \sqrt{12ax} dx + \int_{4a}^{8a} \sqrt{64a^2 - x^2} dx \right]$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2\sqrt{12}a \left[ \frac{x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}} \right]_0^{4a} + 2 \left[ \frac{1}{2}x \sqrt{64a^2 - x^2} \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{64a^2}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{8a} \right]_{4a}^{8a} \\
&= 2.2\sqrt{3} a \frac{2}{3} (4a)^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2 \left[ 0 + 32a^2 \sin^{-1}(1) \right. \\
&\quad \left. - 2a \sqrt{48a^2} - 32a^2 \sin^{-1} \frac{1}{2} \right] \\
&= \frac{64}{\sqrt{3}} a^2 + 2 \left[ 32a^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} - 8\sqrt{3}a^2 - 32a^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{6} \right] \\
&= \left[ \frac{64}{\sqrt{3}} - 16\sqrt{3} \right] a^2 + 32a^2\pi - \frac{32\pi a^2}{3} \\
&= \frac{16}{\sqrt{3}} a^2 + \frac{64\pi a^2}{3} \\
&= \frac{16a^2}{3} (\sqrt{3} + 4\pi) \quad \dots (5)
\end{aligned}$$

Putting the values from (4) and (5) in (3), we get the required shaded area

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 64\pi a^2 - \frac{16a^2}{3} (\sqrt{3} + 4\pi) \\
&= \frac{16a^2}{3} (12\pi - \sqrt{3} - 4\pi) \\
&= \frac{16a^2}{3} (8\pi - \sqrt{3})
\end{aligned}$$

Hence the result.

### EXERCISE 13.2

1. Find the area included between the curves  $y^2 = 4bx$  and  $x^2 = 14ay$ .
2. Find the area included between the parabola  $x^2 = 4ay$  and the curve  $y(x^2 + 4a^2) = 8a^3$ .

$$4. \ a^2 \left( 3\sqrt{3} + \frac{4\pi}{3} \right)$$

$$6. \ \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} + \frac{9\pi}{2} - 9 \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)$$

$$9. \ 25 \frac{1}{3}$$

### 13.5 Area Formula for Parametric Equations

(i) The area bounded by the curve

$$x = f(t), \ y = \phi(t),$$

the  $x$ -axis and the ordinates at the points where  $t = a$ ,  
 $t = b$  is

$$\int_a^b y \frac{dx}{dt} dt$$

The parametric equations of the curve are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} x &= f(t), \\ y &= \phi(t) \end{aligned} \right\}$$

$\therefore$  Required Area

$$= \int_{t=a}^{t=b} y \, dx$$

$$= \int_a^b y \frac{dx}{dt} dt$$

$$= \int_a^b \phi(t) f'(t) dt$$

(ii) The area bounded by the curve  $x = f(t)$ ,  $y = \phi(t)$ , the  $y$ -axis and the abscissae at the points where  $t = c$ ,  $t = d$  is given by

$$\int_c^d x \frac{dy}{dt} dt$$

### 13.6 Area Formula for Polar Equations

The area bounded by the curve  $r = f(\theta)$  and the radii vectors  $\theta = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  is

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta$$

where  $r = f(\theta)$  is finite, continuous, and single-valued function of  $\theta$  in the interval  $\alpha \leq \theta \leq \beta$ .

$\frac{dA}{d\theta}$  lies between  $\frac{1}{2}r^2$  and a quantity which tends to  $\frac{1}{2}r^2$ .

$$\therefore \frac{dA}{d\theta} = \frac{1}{2}r^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{1}{2}r^2 d\theta &= \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{dA}{d\theta} d\theta = (A)_{\alpha}^{\beta} \\ &= (\text{Value of } A \text{ when } \theta = \beta) \\ &\quad - (\text{Value of } A \text{ when } \theta = \alpha) \\ &= \text{Area } OAB - 0 \\ &= \text{Area } OAB\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\text{Area } OAB = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} r^2 d\theta$$

**Note 1.** In some cases, it is more convenient to transform a given cartesian equation into polars rather than to solve for  $y$ . In such cases the above formula is applied after changing to polars.

**Note 2.** Determination of the limits of integration.

- (i) In case of a loop, the limits of integration for finding its area are two successive values of  $\theta$  which make  $r = 0$ .
- (ii) If the curve is symmetrical about both the axes, the integral must be evaluated from 0 to  $\pi/2$  and the whole result be multiplied by 4.
- (iii) If the curve is symmetrical about the  $x$ -axis, i.e., initial line only, the integral may be evaluated from 0 to  $\pi$  and the whole result multiplied by 2.

### 13.7 Area between Two Polar Curves

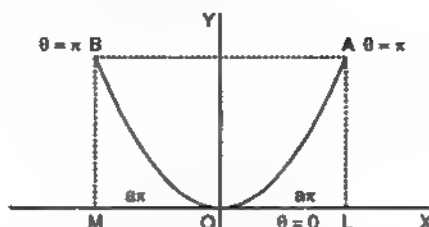
The area bounded by the curve  $r = f(\theta)$  and  $r = F(\theta)$  and the radii vectors  $\theta = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  is

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{1}{2} (r_1^2 - r_2^2) d\theta$$

where  $r_1$  is the 'r' of the outer curve and  $r_2$ , the 'r' of the inner curve.

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be the two given curves  $r = f(\theta)$  and  $r = F(\theta)$  respectively and  $OCA$ ,  $ODB$  the radii vectors  $\theta = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  respectively.





The cycloid is symmetrical about the  $y$ -axis, and the base is the line  $AB$  parallel to  $x$ -axis and at a distance  $2a$  from it.

For the half of cycloid,  $\theta$  varies from  $0$  to  $\pi$ .

The area between the curve and its base

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \text{area } BOA \\
 &= 2 \text{ area } OCA \\
 &= 2 \int_0^\pi x \frac{dy}{d\theta} d\theta \\
 &= 2 \int_0^\pi a (\theta + \sin \theta) (a \sin \theta) d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 \int_0^\pi (\theta \sin \theta + \sin^2 \theta) d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 \int_0^\pi \theta \sin \theta d\theta + 2a^2 \int_0^\pi \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2} d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 \left[ \left\{ \theta (-\cos \theta) \right\}_0^\pi - \int_0^\pi 1 (-\cos \theta) d\theta \right] \\
 &\quad + a^2 \left[ \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]_0^\pi \\
 &= 2a^2 \left[ (-\theta \cos \theta)_0^\pi + (\sin \theta)_0^\pi \right] \\
 &\quad + a^2 \left[ \theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta \right]_0^\pi \\
 &= 2a^2 [-\pi \cos \pi] + a^2 (\pi) \\
 &= 2a^2 \pi + a^2 \pi \\
 &= 3a^2 \pi
 \end{aligned}$$

Again, area between the curve and  $x$ -axis

$$= 2 \text{ area } OAL$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 4 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} b \sin^3 t \cdot 3a \cos^2 t (-\sin t) dt \\
 &= -12ab \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^4 t \cos^2 t dt \\
 &= -12ab \frac{\Gamma \frac{5}{2} \Gamma \frac{3}{2}}{2 \Gamma 4} \\
 &= -\frac{12ab}{2} \frac{\frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{3 \cdot 2} \\
 &= -\frac{12ab}{2} \cdot \frac{3\pi}{48} \\
 &= -\frac{3}{8} \pi ab \\
 &= \frac{3}{8} \pi ab \text{ (numerically)}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Prove that the whole area between the four infinite branches of the tractrix

$$x = a \cos t + \frac{1}{2} a \log \tan^2 \frac{t}{2}, \quad y = a \sin t$$

is  $\pi a^2$ .

**Solution :** The equations of the curve are

$$x = a \cos t + \frac{a}{2} \log \tan^2 \frac{t}{2} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$y = a \sin t \quad \dots (2)$$

- (i) Since  $x$  is an even function of  $t$  and  $y$  is an odd function of  $t$ , the curve is symmetrical about the  $x$ -axis.  
 (ii) Putting  $y = 0$ , we have  $a \sin t = 0$  or  $t = 0$ .

But  $t = 0$  does not make  $x = 0$ .

Hence the curve does not pass through the origin.

$$\therefore |\sin t| \leq 1$$

$$\therefore |y| \leq a$$

i.e., the curve lies between the lines  $y = \pm a$ .

- (iii) When  $y = 0$ ,  $t = 0$ , which makes  $x$  infinite, i.e., if  $x \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $y \rightarrow 0$ .

(iii) The curve meets  $x$ -axis where putting  $y = 0$ , we have

$$at(1 - t^2) = 0$$

$$\therefore t = 0 \text{ or } 1, -1$$

When  $t = 0$ ,  $x = a$ ;

When  $t = \pm 1$ ,  $x = 0$ .

Thus the curve meets  $x$ -axis in the points  $(0, 0)$  and  $(a, 0)$ .

(iv) The curve has no asymptotes, i.e., for no value of  $t$ ,  $x$  (or  $y$ ) tends to  $\infty$  and  $y$  (or  $x$ ) tends to a finite quantity.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(v)} \quad \frac{dx}{dt} &= -2at \\ \frac{dy}{dt} &= a(1 - 3t^2) \\ \therefore \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt} \\ &= \frac{1 - 3t^2}{-2t} \\ &= \frac{3t^2 - 1}{2t} \end{aligned}$$

Now  $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$  when  $3t^2 - 1 = 0$ , i.e.,  $t = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ .

When  $t = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ ,  $x = \frac{2}{3}a$ ,  $y = \pm \frac{2}{3\sqrt{3}}a$ .

Thus at the points  $\left(\frac{2}{3}a, \pm \frac{2}{3\sqrt{3}}a\right)$  the tangent is  $\parallel$  to  $x$ -axis.

Again  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \infty$ , when  $t = 0$ .

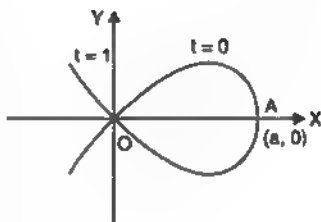
Now when  $t = 0$ ,  $x = a$ ,  $y = 0$ . Thus at the points  $(a, 0)$ , the tangent is  $\perp$  to  $x$ -axis.

Also  $x \leq a$  always. Thus no portion of the curve lies beyond the line  $x = a$ .

As  $t$  increases from 0 to 1,  $x$  decreases from  $a$  to 0 and  $y$  first increases from 0 and then decreases to zero.

Again as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $x \rightarrow -\infty$  and  $y \rightarrow -\infty$ .

The shape of the curve is roughly as shown in the figure and for the upper half of the loop,  $t$  varies from 0 to 1.



∴ Required area of the loop

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \int_0^1 y \frac{dx}{dt} dt \\
 &= 2 \int_0^1 at(1-t^2)(-2at) dt \\
 &= -4a^2 \int_0^1 (t^2 - t^4) dt \\
 &= -4a^2 \left( \frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{t^5}{5} \right)_0^1 \\
 &= -4a^2 \left( \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{5} \right) = \frac{-8a^2}{15} \\
 &= \frac{8a^2}{15} \text{ (in magnitude)}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Show that the area bounded by the cissoid

$$x = a \sin^2 t, y = \frac{a \sin^3 t}{\cos t}$$

and is asymptote is  $\frac{3\pi a^2}{4}$ .

**Solution :** The equation of the curve are

$$x = a \sin^2 t, y = a \frac{\sin^3 t}{\cos t} \quad \dots (1)$$

to trace the curve roughly to find the limits of integration.

(i) Since  $x$  is an even function of  $t$ , and  $y$  is an odd function of  $t$ , the curve is symmetrical about the  $x$ -axis.

(ii)  $x = 0$  gives  $\sin^2 t = 0$  or  $t = 0$  which also makes  $y = 0$ .

∴ The curve passes through the origin.

(iii) The curve meets both the axes only at the origin.

$$(iv) \quad \frac{dx}{dt} = 2a \sin t \cos t$$

∴ Required area between the curve and its asymptote

= 2 × Area of the upper half of the curve

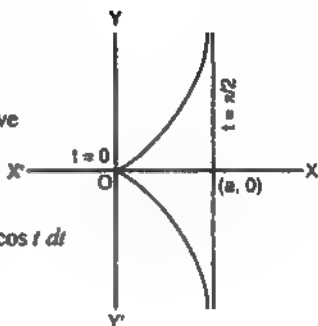
$$= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} y \frac{dx}{dt} dt$$

$$= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} a \frac{\sin^3 t}{\cos t} 2a \sin t \cos t dt$$

$$= 4a^2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^4 t dt$$

$$= 4a^2 \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$= \frac{3\pi a^2}{4}$$



**Example 6.** Find the area between the curve  $r = a\theta \cos \theta$  and the radii vectors  $\theta = 0$ ,  $\theta = \pi/2$ .

**Solution :** The given curve is

$$r = a \theta \cos \theta$$

Required sectorial area

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} r^2 d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} a^2 \theta^2 \cos^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta^2 \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2} d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{4} \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta^2 d\theta + \frac{a^2}{4} \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta^2 \cos 2\theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{4} \left( \frac{\theta^3}{3} \right)_0^{\pi/2} + \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ \left( \theta^2 \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right)_0^{\pi/2} - \int_0^{\pi/2} 2\theta \cdot \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} d\theta \right]$$

$$= \frac{a^2}{12} \frac{\pi^3}{8} + \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ 0 - \int_0^{\pi/2} \theta \sin 2\theta d\theta \right]$$

$$= \frac{a^2 \pi^3}{96} - \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ \left\{ \theta \left( -\frac{\cos 2\theta}{2} \right) \right\}_0^{\pi/2} - \int_0^{\pi/2} 1 \cdot \frac{-\cos 2\theta}{2} d\theta \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{a^2 \pi^3}{96} - \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ \frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \right] \\
 &= \frac{a^2 \pi^3}{96} - \frac{\pi a^2}{16} - \frac{a^3}{16} (\sin \pi - \sin 0) \\
 &= \frac{a^2 \pi^3}{96} - \frac{\pi a^2}{16} - 0 \\
 &= \frac{\pi a^2}{16} \left( \frac{\pi^2}{6} - 1 \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** Find the area of a loop of the curve  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$  and hence find its total area.

**Solution :** The curve is

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta \quad \dots (1)$$

Since the equation remains unchanged on changing  $\theta$  to  $-\theta$  or  $\pi - \theta$ , hence the curve is symmetrical about both the axes.

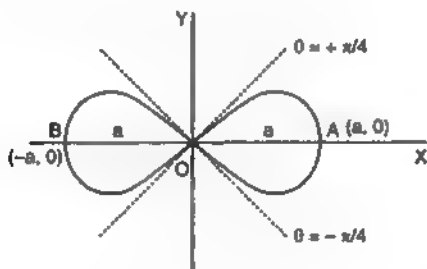
For the loop putting  $r = 0$ , we have

$$\cos 2\theta = 0 = \cos \left( \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$\therefore 2\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore \theta = -\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4} \quad \text{[two consecutive values]}$$

Hence a loop lies between the radii vectors  $\theta = -\pi/4$  and  $\theta = \pi/4$ . The curve consists of two equal loops and for half the loop in the first quadrant,  $\theta$  varies from  $\theta$  to  $\pi/4$ .



∴ Area of a loop

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/4} a^2 \cos 2\theta d\theta \\
 &= a^2 \left( \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right)_0^{\pi/4} = \frac{a^2}{2} (1 - 0) = \frac{a^2}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

∴ Total area of the curve

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \times \frac{a^2}{2} \\
 &= a^2
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** Show that the area of a loop of  $r = a \cos n\theta$  is  $\frac{\pi a^2}{4n}$ ,  $n$  being integral. Also prove that the whole area is  $\frac{\pi a^2}{4}$  or  $\frac{\pi a^2}{2}$  according as  $n$  is odd or even.

**Solution :** The equation of the curve is

$$r = a \cos n\theta \quad \dots (1)$$

For a loop putting  $r = 0$ , we get

$$\cos n\theta = 0$$

$$\therefore n\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2} \quad [\text{two consecutive values}]$$

$$\therefore \theta = \frac{-\pi}{2n}, \frac{\pi}{2n}$$

Thus one loop of the curve is obtained as  $\theta$  varies from

$$\frac{-\pi}{2n} \text{ to } \frac{\pi}{2n}$$

∴ Area of one loop

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_{-\pi/2n}^{\pi/2n} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\pi/2n}^{\pi/2n} a^2 \cos^2 n\theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{a^2}{2} \int_{-\pi/2n}^{\pi/2n} \frac{1 + \cos 2n\theta}{2} d\theta
 \end{aligned}$$

The curve is symmetrical about the initial line.

Let  $\theta = \alpha$  when  $r = 0$

$$\therefore a + b \cos \alpha = 0$$

$$\therefore \cos \alpha = -\frac{a}{b}$$

and the line  $\theta = \alpha$  is the tangent at the pole.

For the larger loop,  $\theta$  varies from 0 to  $\alpha$ , and for the smaller loop,  $\theta$  varies from  $\alpha$  to  $\pi$ , above the initial line.

$\therefore$  Required sum of the areas of the two loops

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2 \left[ \int_0^\alpha \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta + \int_\alpha^\pi \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta \right] \\ &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta \\ &\quad \left[ \because \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_b^c f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx \right] \\ &= \int_0^\pi (a + b \cos \theta)^2 d\theta \\ &= \int_0^\pi (a^2 + b^2 \cos^2 \theta + 2ab \cos \theta) d\theta \\ &= \int_0^\pi \left( a^2 + b^2 \cdot \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2} + 2ab \cos \theta \right) d\theta \\ &= \left[ \left( a^2 + \frac{b^2}{2} \right) \theta + \frac{b^2}{4} \sin 2\theta + 2ab \sin \theta \right]_0^\pi \\ &= \left( a^2 + \frac{b^2}{2} \right) \pi \end{aligned}$$

**Example 10.** Find the area of the loop of the curve

$$x^3 + y^3 = 3axy$$

**Solution :** The given curve is

$$x^3 + y^3 = 3axy$$

changing to polars (by putting  $x = r \cos \theta$ ,  $y = r \sin \theta$ ), we have

$$r^2 (\cos^3 \theta + \sin^3 \theta) = 3ar^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$$

$$\text{or} \quad r = \frac{3a \sin \theta \cos \theta}{\sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta} \quad \dots (1)$$



For a loop, putting  $r = 0$ , we get

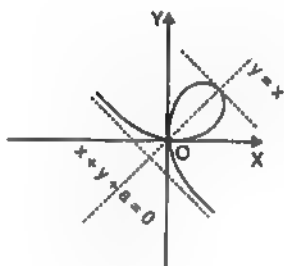
$$\sin \theta \cos \theta = 0$$

$$\text{i.e., } \sin \theta = 0 \text{ and } \cos \theta = 0$$

$$\text{or } \theta = 0 \text{ and } \pi/2$$

[two consecutive values]

Hence as  $\theta$  varies from 0 to  $\pi/2$ ,  
we get the loop.



$\therefore$  Required area

$$= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta$$

$$= \frac{9a^2}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \theta d\theta}{(\sin^3 \theta + \cos^3 \theta)^2}$$

$$= \frac{9a^2}{2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\tan^2 \theta \sec^2 \theta d\theta}{(1 + \tan^3 \theta)^2}$$

[dividing the numerator and  
denominator by  $\cos^6 \theta$ ]

[Put  $t = \tan^3 \theta$

$$\therefore dt = 3 \tan^2 \theta \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$

when  $\theta = 0$ ,  $t = 0$ ,

when  $\theta = \pi/2$ ,  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ]

$$= \frac{9a^2}{2} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1}{(1+t)^2} \frac{dt}{3}$$

$$= \frac{3a^2}{2} \int_0^{\infty} (1+t)^{-2} dt$$

$$= \frac{3a^2}{2} \left[ \frac{(1+t)^{-1}}{-1} \right]_0^{\infty}$$

$$= -\frac{3a^2}{2} \left( \frac{1}{1+t} \right)_0^{\infty}$$

$$= -\frac{3a^2}{2} \left( \frac{1}{\infty} - 1 \right)$$

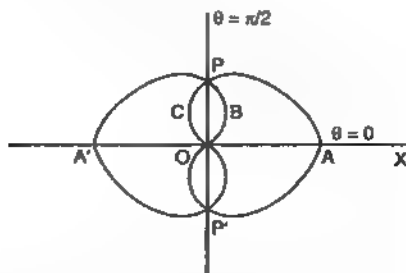
$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\frac{3a^2}{2} (0 - 1) \\
 &= \frac{3a^2}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 11.** Show that the area of the region included between the cardioids  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$  and  $r = a(1 - \cos \theta)$  is  $\frac{a^2}{2}(3\pi - 8)$ .

**Solution :** The equations of the two cardioids are

$$r = a(1 + \cos \theta) \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{and} \quad r = a(1 - \cos \theta) \quad \dots (2)$$



Solving (1) and (2) to find the points of intersection (eliminating  $r$ ), we get

$$a(1 + \cos \theta) = a(1 - \cos \theta)$$

$$\text{or} \quad 2 \cos \theta = 0$$

$$\therefore \cos \theta = 0 = \cos (\pm \pi/2)$$

$$\therefore \theta = \pm \pi/2$$

$\therefore$  For the point of intersection  $P$ ,  $\theta = \pi/2$ .

Since both the cardioids are symmetrical about the initial line,

$\therefore$  By symmetry

Required area common to two cardioids

$$= 2 \text{ Area } OBPCO$$

$$= 4 \text{ Area } OBPO$$

where area  $OBPO$  is the area of curve (2) between the radii vectors  $\theta = 0$ ,  $\theta = \pi/2$ .

∴ Required area

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 4 \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2} r^2 d\theta \\
 &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} a^2 (1 - \cos \theta)^2 d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - 2 \cos \theta + \cos^2 \theta) d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 [\theta - 2 \sin \theta]_0^{\pi/2} + 2a^2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 \theta d\theta \\
 &= 2a^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - 2 \right) + 2a^2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \\
 &= 2a^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - 2 + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \\
 &= 2a^2 \left( \frac{3\pi}{4} - 2 \right) \\
 &= \frac{a^2}{2} (3\pi - 8)
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 12.** Show that the area common to the ellipses

$$a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = 1 \text{ and } b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = 1,$$

where  $0 < a < b$  is  $\frac{4}{ab} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{a}{b} \right)$ .

**Solution :** The first ellipse is

$$a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = 1 \quad \dots (1)$$

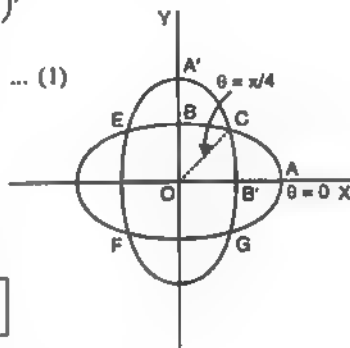
$$\text{or } \frac{x^2}{\left(\frac{1}{a^2}\right)} + \frac{y^2}{\left(\frac{1}{b^2}\right)} = 1$$

Its major axis lies along x-axis and minor axis along y-axis

$$\left[ \because 0 < a < b \text{ (given)} \therefore \frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{b} \right]$$

The second ellipse is

$$b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = 1 \quad \dots (2)$$



6. Prove that the area of the curve

$$x = a \cos \theta + b \sin \theta + c,$$

$$y = a' \cos \theta + b' \sin \theta + c'$$

is equal to  $\pi (ab' - a'b)$ .

7. Find the area between the following curves and the radii vectors:

(a)  $r = a\theta^{-1/2}$ ,  $\theta = \alpha$  to  $\theta = \beta$ .

(b)  $r = ae^{a \cos \theta}$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  to  $\theta = \beta + \gamma$  ( $\gamma < 2\pi$ ).

(c)  $r = ae^{a\theta}$ ,  $\theta = \alpha$  to  $\theta = \beta$ .

(d)  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 + \cos \theta$ ,  $\theta = 0$  to  $\theta = \alpha$ .

8. Find the whole area of the

(a) circle  $r = 2a \cos \theta$

(b) cardioid  $r = a(1 - \cos \theta)$

(c) cardioid  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$

(d) curve  $r^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \theta + b^2 \sin^2 \theta$

(e) curve  $r = 3 + 2 \cos \theta$ .

9. Find the area of a loop of the curve

(a)  $r = a \sin 3\theta$  (three leaved rose)

(b)  $r = a \cos 2\theta$  (four leaved rose)

(c)  $r = a \sin \theta$  (four leaved rose)

Find also the total area in each case.

10. Find the area of a loop of the curve

$$r = a \cos 3\theta + b \sin 3\theta.$$

11. Find the area of one loop of
- $r = a \cos 4\theta$
- .

12. Find the area of a loop of the curve

$$r = \sqrt{3} \cos 3\theta + \sin 3\theta.$$

13. Calculate the ratio of the area of the larger to the area of the smaller loop of the curve

$$r = \frac{1}{2} + \cos 2\theta.$$

14. Show that the area contained between the circle  $r = a$  and the curve  $r = a \cos 5\theta$  is equal to three-fourths of the area of the circle.
15. Find the area of the loop of the following curves:
- (a)  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 4axy^2$       (b)  $x^4 + y^4 = 4a^2xy$   
 (c)  $x^5 + y^5 = 5ax^2y^2$       (d)  $x^6 + y^6 = a^2x^2y^2$   
 (e)  $x^4 + 3x^2y^2 + 2y^4 = a^2xy$
16. Prove that the area of the loop of the curve  $x^3 + y^3 = 3axy$  is three times the area of a loop of the curve  $r^3 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ .
17. Prove that the area of the loop of the curve  $x^5 + y^5 = 5ax^2y^2$  is five times the area of a loop of the curve  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ .
18. Prove that the area common to the circles  $r = a\sqrt{2}$  and  $r = 2a \cos \theta$  is  $a^2(\pi - 1)$ .
19. Prove that the area common to the circle  $r = a$  and the cardioid  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$  is
- $$a^2 \left( \frac{5\pi}{4} - 2 \right).$$
20. Find the area outside the circle  $r = 2a \cos \theta$  and inside the cardioid  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$ .
21. Find the area inside the circle  $r = \sin \theta$  and outside the cardioid  $r = 1 - \cos \theta$ .
22. Find the area common to the ellipses
- $$x^2 + 2y^2 = a^2 \text{ and } 2x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$
23. Find the ratio of the two parts into which the parabola  $2a = r(1 + \cos \theta)$  divides the area of the cardioid  $r = 2a(1 + \cos \theta)$ .
24. Find the area between the curve  $r = a(\sec \theta + \cos \theta)$  and its asymptote.
25. Show that the area bounded by the curve  $p = f(r)$  and the two radii vectors  $r = a$ ,  $r = b$  is

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_a^b \frac{pr}{\sqrt{r^2 - p^2}} dr.$$

$$(c) \frac{5a^2}{2}$$

$$(d) \frac{\pi a^2}{12}$$

$$(e) \frac{a^2}{4} \log 2$$

$$20. \frac{\pi a^2}{2}$$

$$21. 1 - \frac{\pi}{4}$$

$$22. 2\sqrt{2} a^2 \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right)$$

$$23. \frac{9\pi - 16}{9\pi + 16}$$

$$24. \pi a^2$$

# 14

## Determination of Lengths (Rectification)

---

### 14.1 Rectification

**Definition.** The process of finding the length of an arc of a curve between the two given points on it is called *rectification*.

### 14.2 Arc Formula for Cartesian Equations

To find the length of the arc of the curve  $y = f(x)$  between the points where  $x = a$ ,  $y = b$ .

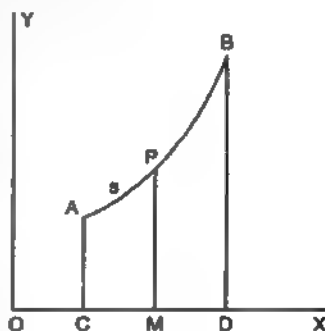
Or

To show that the length of the arc of the curve  $y = f(x)$  between the points where  $x = a$ ,  $y = b$  is given by

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx$$

where  $y$  and  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  are continuous and single valued functions in the interval  $a \leq x \leq b$  and the integrand does not change sign in the interval.

Let  $AB$  be the curve  $y = f(x)$  where  $A$ ,  $B$  are the points whose abscissae are  $a$  and  $b$  respectively and  $CA$ ,  $DB$  are their ordinates.



Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve. Draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $x$ -axis.

If  $s$  denotes the length of the arc  $AP$  measured from the fixed point  $A$  to the variable point  $P$ , then  $s$  is clearly a function of  $x$ .

From differential calculus, we know that

$$\frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx &= \int_a^b \frac{ds}{dx} dx \\ &= [s]_a^b \\ &= (\text{value of } s \text{ at } x = b) \\ &\quad - (\text{value of } s \text{ at } x = a) \\ &= \text{arc } AB - 0 \\ &= \text{arc } AB \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\text{arc } AB = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx$

**Note 1.** From (1), we have

$$s = \int \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx$$

**Note 2.** If the equation of the curve is of the form  $x = f(y)$ , then the length of the arc between the points, where  $y = c$ ,  $y = d$  is given by

$$\int_c^d \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dy}\right)^2} dy$$

### 14.3 Arc Formula for Parametric Equations

To show that the length of the arc of the curve  $x = f(t)$ ,  $y = \phi(t)$  between the points where  $t = a$ ,  $t = b$  is given by

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2} dt$$

where  $x$  and  $y$  are continuous and single-valued functions of  $t$  in the interval  $a \leq t \leq b$ .



Let  $AB$  be the curve  $x = f(t)$ ,  $y = \phi(t)$  where  $A, B$  are the two points  $t = a, t = b$  respectively.

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve. Draw  $AC, BD$  and  $PM$  perpendicular on  $OX$ .

If  $s$  denotes the length of the arc from the fixed point  $A$  to the variable point  $P$ , then  $s$  is clearly a function of  $t$ .

From differential calculus, we know that

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int_a^b \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2} dt &= \int_a^b \frac{ds}{dt} dt \\ &= (s)_a^b \\ &= (\text{value of } s \text{ when } t = b) \\ &\quad - (\text{value of } s \text{ when } t = a) \\ &= \text{arc } AB - 0 \\ &= \text{arc } AB \end{aligned}$$

Hence, 
$$\text{arc } AB = \int_a^b \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2} dt \quad \dots (1)$$

**Note 1.** It has been assumed here that the integration does not change sign in the range of integration

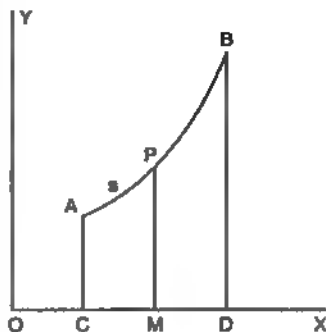
$$a \leq t \leq b$$

**Note 2.** From (1),

$$s = \int \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2} dt$$

#### 14.4 Arc Formula for Polar Equations

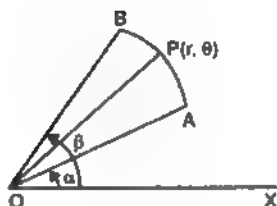
To show that the length of the arc of the curve  $r = f(\theta)$  between the points, where  $\theta = \alpha, \theta = \beta$  is



$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta$$

Let  $AB$  be the curve  $r = f(\theta)$  and  $A, B$  the points where  $\theta = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  respectively.

Let  $P(r, \theta)$  be any point on the curve. If  $s$  denotes the length of the arc measured from the fixed point  $A$  to the variable point  $P$ , then clearly  $s$  is a function of  $\theta$ .



From Differential Calculus, we know that

$$\frac{ds}{d\theta} = \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta &= \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \frac{ds}{d\theta} d\theta \\ &= (s)_{\alpha}^{\beta} \\ &= (\text{value of } s \text{ when } \theta = \beta) \\ &\quad - (\text{value of } s \text{ when } \theta = \alpha) \\ &= \text{arc } AB - 0 \\ &= \text{arc } AB \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $\text{arc } AB = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta$

**Note 1.** From (1),

$$s = \int \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta$$

**Note 2.** When the equation of the curve is of the form  $\theta = f(r)$ , the length of the arc from  $r_1$  to  $r_2$  is given by

$$\int_{r_1}^{r_2} \sqrt{1 + r^2 \left(\frac{d\theta}{dr}\right)^2} dr$$

## 14.5 Arc Formula for Pedal Equations

To show that the length of the arc of the curve  $p = f(r)$  between the points where  $r = a$ ,  $r = b$  is

$$\int_a^b \frac{r \, dr}{\sqrt{r^2 - p^2}}$$

Let  $AB$  be the curve  $p = f(r)$  and  $A, B$  be the points where  $r = a$ ,  $r = b$ .

Let  $P(p, r)$  be any point on the curve.

If  $s$  denotes the length of the arc  $AP$  measured from a fixed point  $A$  to the variable point  $P$ , then  $s$  is clearly a function of  $r$ .

From differential calculus, we know that

$$p = r \sin \phi \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{or} \quad \sin \phi = p/r$$

$$\text{Also} \quad \frac{ds}{dr} = \sec \phi = \frac{1}{\cos \phi}$$

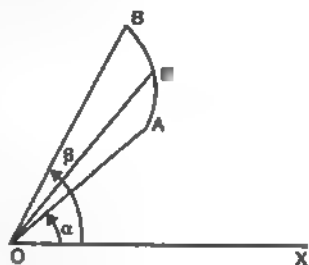
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \phi}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{p^2}{r^2}}}$$

$$= \frac{r}{\sqrt{r^2 - p^2}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \int_a^b \frac{r \, dr}{\sqrt{r^2 - p^2}} &= \int_a^b \frac{ds}{dr} \, dr = (s)_a^b \\ &= (\text{value of } s \text{ when } r = b) \\ &\quad - (\text{value of } s \text{ when } r = a) \\ &= \text{arc } AB - 0 \\ &= \text{arc } AB \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Hence,} \quad \text{arc } AB = \int_a^b \frac{r \, dr}{\sqrt{r^2 - p^2}}$$

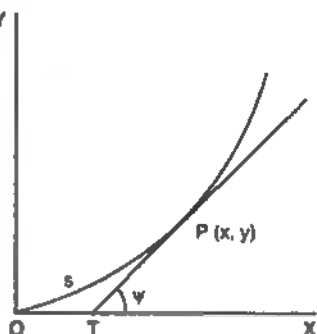


### 14.8 To obtain the intrinsic equation of a curve from the parametric equations

Let the parametric equations of the curve be

$$x = f(t), y = \phi(t) \dots (1)$$

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on it, such that arc  $OP = s$ ,  $O$  being a fixed point on the curve. Let  $OT$ , the tangent at  $O$  to the curve, be taken as the  $x$ -axis, and  $O$  as the origin. Let the tangent at  $P$  make an angle  $PTX = \psi$  with  $x$ -axis.



From (1),

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = f'(t), \frac{dy}{dt} = \phi'(t)$$

$$\therefore \tan \psi = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt} = \frac{\phi'(t)}{f'(t)} \dots (2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } s &= \int_0^t \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2} dt \\ &= \int_0^t \sqrt{\{f'(t)\}^2 + \{\phi'(t)\}^2} dt \\ &= F(t) \text{ say} \end{aligned} \dots (3)$$

Eliminating  $t$  from (2) and (3), we get a relation between  $s$  and  $\psi$ , which is the intrinsic equation of the curve.

### 14.9 To obtain the intrinsic equation of a curve from the polar equation

Let the polar equation of the curve be  $r = f(\theta)$ .

Let  $O$  be the pole, and the initial line be the tangent to the curve at the pole from which the arc is measured.

Let  $P(r, \theta)$  be any point on the curve and  $PT$ , the tangent at  $P$  meeting the initial line in  $T$ .

∴ Required length of arc from  $x = 1$  to  $x = 2$  is

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_1^2 \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{4e^{2x}}{(e^{2x} - 1)^2}\right)^2} dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \sqrt{\frac{(e^{2x} - 1)^2 + 4e^{2x}}{(e^{2x} - 1)^2}} dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \sqrt{\frac{(e^{2x} + 1)^2}{(e^{2x} - 1)^2}} dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \frac{e^{2x} + 1}{e^{2x} - 1} dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}} dx \quad \text{[Dividing the numerator and denominator by } e^x\text{]} \\
 &= \left[ \log(e^x - e^{-x}) \right]_1^2 \\
 &= \log(e^2 - e^{-2}) - \log(e - e^{-1}) \\
 &= \log(e^2 - 1/e^2) - \log(e - 1/e) \\
 &= \log\{(e + 1/e)(e - 1/e)\} - \log(e - 1/e) \\
 &= \log(e + 1/e) + \log(e - 1/e) - \log(e - 1/e) \\
 &= \log(e + 1/e)
 \end{aligned}$$

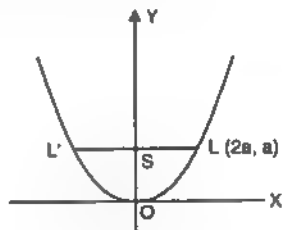
**Example 2.** Find the length of the arc of the parabola  $x^2 = 4ay$ , from the vertex to an extremity of the latus rectum.

**Solution :** Let  $O$  be the vertex and  $L$ , an extremity of the latus rectum of

the parabola  $x^2 = 4ay$  or  $y = \frac{1}{4a} x^2$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{4a} = \frac{x}{2a}$$

For the length of the arc from  $O$   $(0, 0)$  to  $L$   $(2a, a)$ ,  $x$  varies from  $0$  to  $2a$ .



∴ Required length of arc  $OL$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^{2a} \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} dx \\
 &= \int_0^{2a} \sqrt{1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2a} \int_0^{2a} \sqrt{x^2 + 4a^2} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{2a} \left[ \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{x^2 + 4a^2} + \frac{4a^2}{2} \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{2a} \right) \right]_0^{2a} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2a} \left[ \frac{2a}{2} \sqrt{4a^2 + 4a^2} + 2a^2 \sinh^{-1}(1) - 0 \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2a} \left[ a \cdot 2\sqrt{2} a + 2a^2 \log(1 + \sqrt{1+1}) \right] \\
 &\quad \left[ \because \sinh^{-1} x = \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1}) \right] \\
 &= a \left[ \sqrt{2} + \log(\sqrt{2} + 1) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Show that the whole length of the curve

$$x^2(a^2 - x^2) = 8a^2y^2 \text{ is } \pi a\sqrt{2}.$$

**Solution :** To trace the curve roughly to find the limits of integration.

- (i) The curve is symmetrical about both the axes.
- (ii) The curve passes through the origin and the tangents at the origin are given by

$$a^2x^2 = 8a^2y^2$$

$$\text{or } y = \pm \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} x,$$

showing that origin is a node.

- (iii) The curve meets the  $x$ -axis where  $y = 0$ , so putting  $y = 0$  in the given equation, we get

$$x^2(a^2 - x^2) = 0$$

$$\text{or } x = 0, \pm a$$

Hence the curve meets the  $x$ -axis at  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(a, 0)$ ,  $(-a, 0)$ .

The curve meets the  $y$ -axis where  $x = 0$ . So putting  $x = 0$  in the given equation, we get

$$8a^2y^2 = 0$$

i.e.  $y = 0$

i.e. at the origin  $(0, 0)$ .

Shifting the origin to  $(a, 0)$ , the given equation transforms to

$$(x + a)^2 [a^2 - (x + a)^2] = 8a^2y^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{or} \quad 8a^2y^2 &= (x + a)^2 (-x^2 - 2ax) \\ &= -x(x + 2a)(x + a)^2 \end{aligned}$$

and the tangent at the new origin is  $-2a^2x = 0$  or  $x = 0$  i.e. the new  $y$ -axis.

Thus the tangent at  $(a, 0)$  is  $\parallel$  to  $y$ -axis.

(iv) The curve has no asymptotes.

(v) The given curve is

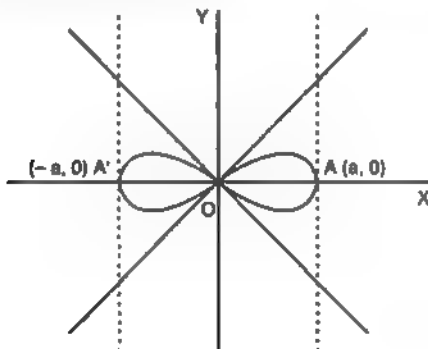
$$y^2 = \frac{1}{8a^2} x^2 (a^2 - x^2) \quad \dots (1)$$

When  $x > a$  numerically,  $y^2$  is  $-ve$ ,

$\therefore y$  is imaginary.

Thus no portion of the curve lies beyond the lines  $x = a$ ,  $x = -a$ .

The shape of the curve is as shown in the figure. The curve consists of two symmetrical loops.



$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \text{ Whole length of the curve} \\
 &= 2 \times \text{length of a loop} \\
 &= 4 \times \text{arc of loop in first quadrant}
 \end{aligned}$$

For half the loop in the first quadrant,  $x$  varies from 0 to  $a$ .

From (1)

$$y = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}a} x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}a} \left[ \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \cdot 1 + x \cdot \frac{-2x}{2\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}a} \left[ \frac{a^2 - x^2 - x^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \right]$$

$$= \frac{a^2 - 2x^2}{2\sqrt{2}a\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore 1 + \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 &= 1 + \frac{(a^2 - 2x^2)^2}{8a^2(a^2 - x^2)} \\
 &= \frac{8a^4 - 8a^2x^2 + a^4 + 4x^4 - 4a^2x^2}{8a^2(a^2 - x^2)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{4x^4 - 12a^2x^2 + 9a^4}{8a^2(a^2 - x^2)}$$

$$= \frac{(3a^2 - 2x^2)^2}{8a^2(a^2 - x^2)}$$

$\therefore$  Required whole length of the curve

$$= 4 \text{ arc } OA$$

$$= 4 \int_0^a \sqrt{1 + \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2} dx$$

$$= 4 \int_0^a \frac{3a^2 - 2x^2}{2\sqrt{2}a\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{[Put } x = a \sin \theta \\ \therefore dx = a \cos \theta d\theta \end{array}$$

$$= \frac{4}{2\sqrt{2}a} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{3a^2 - 2a^2 \sin^2 \theta}{a \cos \theta} a \cos \theta d\theta$$



$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sqrt{2} a \int_0^{\pi/2} [3 - (1 - \cos 2\theta)] d\theta \\
&= \sqrt{2} a \int_0^{\pi/2} (2 + \cos 2\theta) d\theta \\
&= \sqrt{2} a \left[ 2\theta + \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\
&= \sqrt{2} a \left[ \pi + \frac{1}{2} \sin \pi - 0 \right] \\
&= \pi a \sqrt{2}
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Show that the length of an arc of the curve

$$x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta = f'(\theta), \quad x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = f''(\theta)$$

is given by

$$s = f(\theta) + f''(\theta) + c.$$

**Solution :** The curve is given by

$$x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta = f'(\theta) \quad \dots (1)$$

$$x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = f''(\theta) \quad \dots (2)$$

Multiplying (1) by  $\sin \theta$  and (2) by  $\cos \theta$ , and adding,

$$x (\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta) = \sin \theta f'(\theta) + \cos \theta f''(\theta)$$

$$\text{or} \quad x = \sin \theta f'(\theta) + \cos \theta f''(\theta) \quad \dots (3)$$

Again multiplying (1) by  $\cos \theta$  and (2) by  $\sin \theta$ , and subtracting,

$$y (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta) = \cos \theta f'(\theta) - \sin \theta f''(\theta)$$

$$\text{or} \quad y = \cos \theta f'(\theta) - \sin \theta f''(\theta) \quad \dots (4)$$

From (3)

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dx}{d\theta} &= \sin \theta f''(\theta) + f'(\theta) \cos \theta \\
&\quad + \cos \theta f'''(\theta) - \sin \theta f''(\theta) \\
&= [f'(\theta) + f'''(\theta)] \cos \theta
\end{aligned}$$

From (4)

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dy}{d\theta} &= \cos \theta f''(\theta) - \sin \theta f'(\theta) \\
&\quad - \cos \theta f'''(\theta) - \sin \theta f''(\theta) \\
&= -[f'(\theta) + f'''(\theta)] \sin \theta
\end{aligned}$$

**Example 6.** Find the entire length of the cardioid  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$  and show that the arc of the upper half is bisected by  $\theta = \pi/3$ .

**Solution :** The equation of the curve is

$$r = a(1 + \cos \theta) \quad \dots (1)$$

(i) Since the equation remains unchanged on changing  $\theta$  to  $-\theta$ , the curve is symmetrical about the initial line.

(ii) Since  $|\cos \theta| \leq 1$ ,  $\therefore |r| \leq 2a$ .

Thus the curve lies entirely within the circle  $r = 2a$ .

(iii) Putting  $r = 0$ , we get  $1 + \cos \theta = 0$

$$\text{or } \cos \theta = -1 = \cos \pi$$

$$\therefore \theta = \pi$$

Hence the curve passes through the pole and the tangent at the pole is  $\theta = \pi$ .

(iv) The various values of  $r$  for some particular values of  $\theta$  are :

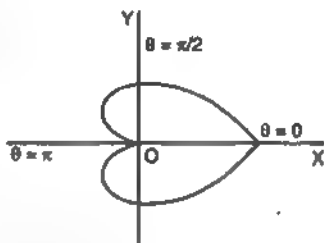
$\theta :$	0	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\pi$
$r :$	$2a$	$\frac{3a}{2}$	$a$	$\frac{a}{2}$	0

Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure. For the upper half of the curve,  $\theta$  varies from 0 to  $\pi$ .

From (1),

$$\frac{dr}{d\theta} = -a \sin \theta$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 &= a^2(1 + \cos \theta)^2 + a^2 \sin^2 \theta \\ &= a^2(1 + \cos^2 \theta + 2 \cos \theta + \sin^2 \theta) \\ &= a^2(2 + 2 \cos \theta) \\ &= 2a^2(1 + \cos \theta) \\ &= 2a^2 \cdot 2 \cos^2 \theta/2 \\ &= 4a^2 \cos^2 \theta/2 \end{aligned}$$



∴ Required entire length of the curve

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \int_0^{\pi} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta \\
 &= 2 \int_0^{\pi} 2a \cos \frac{\theta}{2} d\theta \\
 &= 4a \left( \frac{\sin \frac{\theta}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} \right)_0^{\pi} = 8a
 \end{aligned}$$

Now, length of the upper half of the curve =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8a = 4a$ .

Also length of the arc from  $\theta = 0$  to  $\theta = \pi/3$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^{\pi/3} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} d\theta \\
 &= \int_0^{\pi/3} 2a \cos \frac{\theta}{2} d\theta \\
 &= 2a \left( \frac{\sin \frac{\theta}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}} \right)_0^{\pi/3} = 2a \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \times 4a \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \times \text{length of the upper half of the curve}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** Prove that the perimeter of the lemniscate

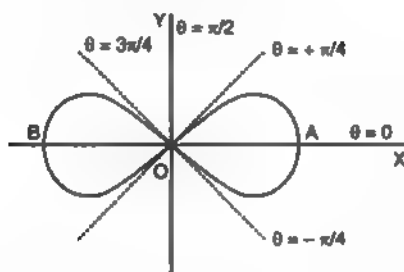
$$r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta \text{ is } \frac{a}{2\pi} \left( \Gamma \frac{1}{4} \right)^2.$$

**Solution :** Equation of the curve is

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta \quad \dots (1)$$

It is symmetrical about the pole, and the lines  $\theta = 0$  and

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$



The curve passes through the pole and the tangents at pole are given by

$$\cos 2\theta = 0$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad 2\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}$$

It has no asymptotes.

$\therefore$  Greatest value of  $\cos 2\theta = 1$

$\therefore$  Greatest value of  $r^2 = a^2$

$$\Rightarrow -a \leq r \leq a$$

When  $\theta = 0$ ,  $r = a$

When  $\theta = \pi/4$ ,  $r = 0$

As  $\theta$  increases from 0 to  $\pi/4$ ,  $r$  is +ve and decreasing.

When  $\pi/4 < \theta < \pi/2$ ,  $r^2$  is -ve.

$\therefore r$  is imaginary.

Thus the shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

Taking logarithm, (1) becomes

$$2 \log r = 2 \log a + \log \cos 2\theta$$

Differentiating w.r.t.  $\theta$ , we get

$$\frac{2}{r} \frac{dr}{d\theta} = 0 + \frac{1}{\cos 2\theta} (-2 \sin 2\theta)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{r} \frac{dr}{d\theta} = -\tan 2\theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{a\Gamma\frac{1}{2} \cdot \Gamma\frac{1}{4} \cdot \Gamma\frac{1}{4}}{\Gamma\left(1-\frac{1}{4}\right)\Gamma\frac{1}{4}} \\
 &= \frac{4a\sqrt{\pi}\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{4}\right)^2}{\pi} \\
 &\quad \sin \pi/4 \\
 &= \frac{a\sqrt{\pi}}{\pi\sqrt{2}}\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 \\
 &= \frac{a}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\Gamma\frac{1}{4}\right)^2
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** Show that the intrinsic equation of the curve

$$r = a(1 + \cos \theta) \text{ is}$$

$$s = 4a \sin \left( \frac{\psi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6} \right)$$

and hence or otherwise, prove that

$$s^2 + 9\rho^2 = 16a^2$$

where  $\rho$  is the radius of curvature at any point, and  $s$  the length of the arc intercepted between the vertex and the point.

**Solution :** The equation of the cardioid is

$$r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$$

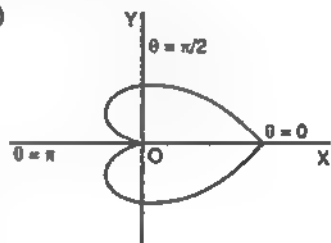
$$\therefore \frac{dr}{d\theta} = -a \sin \theta$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta = r \frac{d\theta}{dr}$$

$$= \frac{\left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)}{r}$$

$$= \frac{a(1 + \cos \theta)}{-a \sin \theta}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}{-2 \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}} \\
 &= -\cot \frac{\theta}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$



$$\text{or} \quad 3p = 4a \cos\left(\frac{\psi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) \quad \dots (4)$$

Squaring and adding (3) and (4), we have

$$\begin{aligned} s^2 + 9p^2 &= 16a^2 \left[ \sin^2\left(\frac{\psi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \cos^2\left(\frac{\psi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) \right] \\ &= 16a^2 \end{aligned}$$

### EXERCISE 14.1

1. Show that the length of the arc of the curve  $y = \log \sec x$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = \pi/3$  is  $\log(2 + \sqrt{3})$ .
2. Find the length of the arc of the curve  $y = ae^x$  from the point  $(0, a)$  to the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .
3. Show that the length of an arc of the curve

$$x^2 = a^2(1 - e^{2y/a})$$

measured from  $(0, 0)$  to  $(x, y)$  is  $a \log \frac{a+x}{a-x} - x$ .

4. Find the length of the catenary  $y = a \cosh(x/a)$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = b$ .
5. Show that in the catenary  $y = c \cosh\left(\frac{x}{c}\right)$ , the length of the arc from the vertex (where  $x = 0$ ) to any point  $(x, y)$  is given by
 

$(a) \quad s = c \sinh\left(\frac{x}{c}\right)$

$(b) \quad s^2 = y - c^2$
6. Find the length of the arc of the semi-cubical parabola  $ay^2 = x^3$  from the vertex to the point  $(a, a)$ .
7. Find the length of the arc of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .
 

(a) from the vertex to an extremity of the latus rectum.  
 (b) cut off by the latus rectum.  
 (c) cut off by the line  $3y = 8x$ .

8. Find the arc length of the curve  $y = \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \log x$  from  $x = 1$  to  $x = 2$ .

9. Find the perimeter of the loop of the curve

$$(a) \quad 9ay^2 = (x - 2a)(x - 5a)^2$$

18. Show that the arc of the upper half of the curve  $r = a(1 - \cos \theta)$  is bisected by  $\theta = 2\pi/3$ .
19. Show that the length of the arc of the hyperbolic spiral  $r\theta = a$  taken from the point  $r = a$  to  $r = 2a$  is

$$a \left[ \sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2} + \log \left( \frac{2 + \sqrt{8}}{1 + \sqrt{5}} \right) \right].$$

20. Find the perimeter of the curve  $r = a \cos \theta$ .
21. Find the length of the arc of the parabola  $\frac{2a}{r} = 1 + \cos \theta$  cut off by its latus rectum.
22. Show that the whole length of the limaçon  $r = a + b \cos \theta$  ( $a > b$ ) is equal to that of an ellipse whose semi-axes are equal in length to the maximum and minimum radii vectors of the limaçon.
23. Prove that the perimeter of the limaçon  $r = a + b \cos \theta$ , if  $b/a$  be small, is approximately  $2\pi a \left( 1 + \frac{1}{4} \frac{b^2}{a^2} \right)$ .
24. Show that the length of the arc of the hyperbola  $xy = a^2$  between the limits  $x = b$  and  $x = c$  is equal to the arc of the curve  $p^2 (a^4 + r^4) = a^4 r^2$  between the limits  $r = b$ ,  $r = c$ .
25. If  $s$  be the length of the curve  $r = a \tanh \theta/2$  between the origin and  $\theta = 2\pi$  and  $A$  the area between the same points, then show that

$$A = a(s - \pi a).$$

26. Show that the length of the loop of the curve  $3x^2y - y^3 = (x^2 + y^2)^2$  is

$$2 \int_0^1 \frac{dr}{\sqrt{1-r^6}}.$$

27. Show that the intrinsic equation of the semi-cubical parabola  $3ay^2 = 2x^3$  is

$$9s = 4a(\sec^3 \psi - 1).$$

28. Show that the intrinsic equation of the parabolic  $y^2 = 4ax$  is  $s = a \cot \psi \operatorname{cosec} \psi + a \log (\cot \psi + \operatorname{cosec} \psi)$ .

29. For the astroid  $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$ , prove that

$$s = \frac{3a}{4} \cos^3 \psi.$$

30. Prove that the intrinsic equation of the equiangular spiral  $r = ae^{m\theta}$  when the arc is measured from  $(a, 0)$  is

$$s = \frac{a\sqrt{1+m^2}}{m} [e^{m(\psi-\theta)} - 1]$$

$$\text{where } \beta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{m}\right).$$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 14.1

2.  $f(y) - f(a)$ , where

$$f(y) = \log\left(\frac{y}{1+\sqrt{1+y^2}}\right) + \sqrt{1+y^2}$$

4.  $a \sinh \frac{b}{a}$

6.  $\frac{8}{27} (13\sqrt{13-8})$

7. (a)  $a[\Gamma 2 + \log(\Gamma 2 + 1)]$  (b)  $2a[\Gamma 2 + \log(\Gamma 2 + 1)]$

(c)  $a\left(\frac{15}{16} + \log 2\right)$

8.  $\frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \log 2$

9. (a)  $4\sqrt{3}a$

(b)  $\frac{4a}{\sqrt{3}}$

(c)  $\frac{4a}{\sqrt{3}}$

12. (a)  $\sqrt{2}(e^{3/2} - 1)$

(b)  $\frac{5}{2}(e^2 - 1)$

(c)  $\frac{4a}{3} \sin 3\theta$

(d)  $2a$

13.  $8a$

14.  $8a$

15.  $4\sqrt{3}$

16.  $\frac{a^2 + ab + b^2}{a + b}$

20.  $\pi a$

21.  $2a[\sqrt{2} + \log(\sqrt{2} + 1)]$



# 15

## Determination of Volumes and Surfaces of Solids of Revolution

---

### 15.1 Definitions

If a plane area is revolved about a fixed straight line lying in its own plane, then the body so generated by the plane area is called the *solid of revolution* and the surface generated by the boundary of the plane area is called the *surface of revolution*.

The fixed line about which the plane area rotates is called the *axis of revolution*.

For example, a right angled triangle when revolved about one of its sides (forming the right angle) generates a right circular cone.

**Remember.** The section of a solid of revolution by a plane perpendicular to the axis of revolution is a circle, having its centre on the axis of revolution.

### 15.2 Volume Formulae for Cartesian Equations

To show that the volume of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis, of the area bounded by the curve  $y = f(x)$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  is  $\int_a^b \pi y^2 dx$ , where  $y = f(x)$  is a finite, continuous and single valued function of  $x$  in the interval  $a \leq x \leq b$ .

Let  $AB$  be the curve  $y = f(x)$  and  $CA$ ,  $DB$  be the coordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  respectively.

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve  $AB$ .

Draw  $PM \perp OX$ .

$\therefore OM = x$  and  $PM = y$

Let  $V$  denote the volume of the solid generated by the revolution about  $x$ -axis of the area  $ACMP$ .



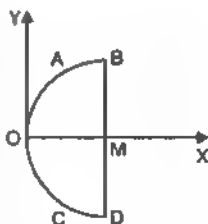
The volume of the solid generated by revolution about the  $y$ -axis of the area bounded by the curve  $x = f(y)$ , the  $y$ -axis and the abscissae  $y = a$ ,  $y = b$  is

$$\int_a^b \pi x^2 dy.$$

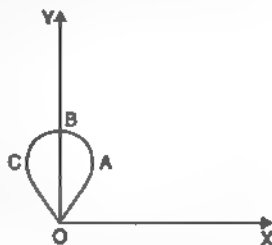
The result follows immediately on interchanging  $x$  and  $y$  in the above proposition.

### An Important Advice (Remember)

- (i) If the generating curve is symmetrical about the  $x$ -axis and it is required to find the volume generated by the revolution of the area about the  $x$ -axis, in such a case we shall revolve only one of the symmetrical portions, because the part of the curve above the  $x$ -axis generates the same volume as the part of the curve below  $x$ -axis when revolved about the  $x$ -axis. Thus the volume generated by the revolution of the area  $DCOAB$  about  $OX$  = volume generated by the revolution of the area  $OABM$  or  $OCDM$  about  $OX$ .



- (ii) If the curve is symmetrical about  $y$ -axis and the same curve be made to revolve about the  $x$ -axis (the curve lying only on one side of the  $x$ -axis) then the volume generated =  $2 \times$  volume generated by the portion  $OAB$  lying to the right of  $y$ -axis.



### 15.3 Prolate and Oblate Spheroids Definitions

- (i) The solid formed by the revolution of the ellipse about the *major axis* is called a *prolate spheroid*
- (ii) The solid formed by the revolution of the ellipse about the *minor axis* is called an *oblate spheroid*.

### 15.4 Revolution about any axis

The volume of the solid generated by the revolution about any axis  $CD$  of the area bounded by the curve  $AB$ , the axis  $CD$  and the perpendiculars  $AC$ ,  $BD$  on the axis, is

$$\int_{OM}^{ON} \pi (PM)^2 d(OM)$$

where  $O$  is a fixed point on the axis  $CD$  and  $PM$  is the perpendicular from any point  $P$  of the curve  $AB$  on  $CD$ .

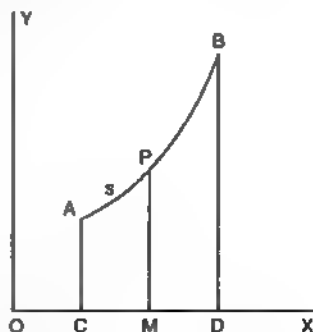
Take the fixed point  $O$  on  $CD$  as origin and  $CD$ , the axis of revolution as  $x$ -axis.

Let  $OY \perp$  to  $CD$  be taken as  $y$ -axis.

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve referred to  $OC$  and  $OY$  as axes.

Draw  $PM \perp OC$ , so that  $OM = x$  and  $MP = y$ .

If  $OC = a$  and  $OD = b$ , then the required volume



$$= \int_a^b \pi y^2 dx = \pi \int_a^b (PM)^2 d(OM)$$

**Remember:**

#### *Practical Method for Questions*

- (1) Take any point  $P(x, y)$  on the curve.
- (2) Draw  $PM \perp$  on the line about which the curve is to be revolved and find the length of  $PM$ .
- (3) Find the distance  $OM$  of the foot of  $\perp$  from a fixed point  $O$  (say) on the line and take its differential.
- (4) Then use the formula

$$\int \pi (PM)^2 d(OM)$$

with proper limits for integration.

### 15.5 Volume Formula for Parametric Equations

- (i) The volume of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis, of the area bounded by the curve



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2 \int_0^{\infty} \pi (a-x)^2 dy \\
 &= 2\pi \int_0^{\infty} \left[ a - \frac{ay^2}{a^2+y^2} \right]^2 dy \quad [\text{From (1)}] \\
 &= 2\pi \int_0^{\infty} \frac{a^6}{(a^2+y^2)^2} dy \\
 &\quad \begin{aligned} &[\text{Put } y = a \tan \theta \\ &\dots dy = a \sec^2 \theta d\theta \\ &\text{when } y = 0, \theta = 0, \\ &\text{when } y \rightarrow \infty, \theta \rightarrow \pi/2] \end{aligned} \\
 &= 2\pi a^6 \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{a \sec^2 \theta d\theta}{[a^2(1+\tan^2 \theta)]^2} \\
 &= 2\pi a^3 \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^2 \theta d\theta \\
 &= 2\pi a^3 \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \pi^2 a^3.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Find the volume of the spindle shaped solid generated by revolving the astroid  $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$  about the x-axis.

**Solution :** The equation of the curve is

$$x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3} \quad \dots (1)$$

The parametric equation of the curve are

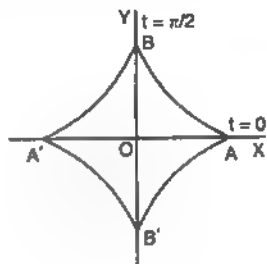
$$\begin{aligned}
 x &= a \cos^3 t \\
 y &= a \sin^3 t \quad \dots (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

The curve is symmetrical about both the axes and for the portion of the curve in the first quadrant,  $t$  varies from 0 to  $\pi/2$ .

$\therefore$  Required volume

= 2  $\times$  volume generated by the arc in the first quadrant

$$= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \pi y^2 \frac{dx}{dt} dt$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2\pi \int_0^{\pi/2} a^2 \sin^6 t (-3a \cos^2 t \sin t) dt \\
 &= -6\pi a^3 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^7 t \cos^2 t dt \\
 &= -6\pi a^3 \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{7+1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{2+1}{2}\right)}{2\Gamma\left(\frac{7+2+2}{2}\right)} \\
 &= -3\pi a^3 \frac{\Gamma 4 \Gamma \frac{3}{2}}{\Gamma \frac{11}{2}} \\
 &= -3\pi a^3 \frac{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}}{\frac{9}{2} \cdot \frac{7}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\pi}} \\
 &= -3\pi a^3 \cdot \frac{32}{315} = -\frac{32\pi a^3}{105} \\
 &= \frac{32\pi a^3}{105} \text{ (in magnitude)}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 6.** The cardioid  $r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$  revolves about the initial line, find the volume of the solid generated.

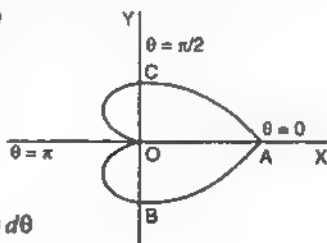
**Solution :** The equation of the cardioid is

$$r = a(1 + \cos \theta)$$

The cardioid is symmetrical about the initial line and for the upper half of the curve,  $\theta$  varies from 0 to  $\pi$ .

$\therefore$  Required volume

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^\pi \frac{2}{3} \pi r^3 \sin \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \pi \int_0^\pi a^3 (1 + \cos \theta)^3 \sin \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \pi a^3 \left[ \frac{(1 + \cos \theta)^4}{-4} \right]_0^\pi
 \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{8\pi a^3}{5\sqrt{5}} \int_0^1 t^2 (t+2)(t^2-2t+1) dt \\
 &= \frac{8\pi a^3}{5\sqrt{5}} \int_0^1 t^2 (t^3-3t+2) dt \\
 &= \frac{8\pi a^3}{5\sqrt{5}} \left[ \frac{t^6}{6} - 3\frac{t^4}{4} + 2\frac{t^3}{3} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{8\pi a^3}{5\sqrt{5}} \left[ \frac{1}{6} - \frac{3}{4} + \frac{2}{3} \right] \\
 &= \frac{8\pi a^3}{5\sqrt{5}} \left( \frac{2-9+8}{12} \right) \\
 &= \frac{2\pi a^3}{15\sqrt{5}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 8.** A basin is formed by the revolution of the curve  $x^3 = 64y$  ( $y > 0$ ) about the axis of  $y$ . If the depth of the basin is 8 cm, how many cubic centimetres of water will it hold?

**Solution :** The equation of the generating curve is

$$x^3 = 64y \quad (y > 0) \quad \dots (1)$$

The curve is symmetrical in opposite quadrants. The shape of the curve is as shown in the figure.

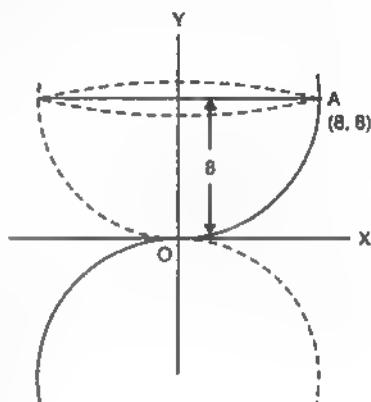
Since the height of the basin is 8 cm, so when  $y = 8$ , from (1),

$$x^3 = 64 \times 8 = 512$$

$$\therefore x = 8$$

Thus  $A(8, 8)$  is the point on the curve (1) at a height of 8 cm.

Thus the basin is formed by the revolution of the arc  $OA$  about  $y$ -axis, where  $A$  is the point  $(8, 8)$ .





∴ Required volume

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^8 \pi x^2 dy \\
 &= \int_0^8 \pi (64y)^{2/3} dy \\
 &= 16\pi \int_0^8 y^{2/3} dy \\
 &= 16\pi \left( \frac{3}{5} y^{5/3} \right)_0^8 \\
 &= \frac{48}{5} \pi [(8)^{5/3} - 0] \\
 &= \frac{48\pi}{5} \cdot 32 = \frac{1536\pi}{5} \text{ cubic curves.}
 \end{aligned}$$

#### EXERCISE 15.1

1. Let  $B$  be a number  $> 1$ . What is the volume of solid generated by the area under the curve  $y = e^{-x}$  between 1 and  $B$  (the axis of revolution being the  $x$ -axis)? Does the volume approach to a limit as  $B$  becomes large? If so, what is the limit?
2. Find the volume generated by rotating about the  $y$ -axis the area bounded by the coordinate axes and the graph of the curve  $y = \cos x$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = \pi/2$ .
3. The part of the curve  $y^2 = x^2(1 - x^2)$  between  $x = 0$  and  $x = 1$  rotates about the  $x$ -axis. Obtain the volume of the solid thus generated.
4. Find the volume of a sphere of radius  $a$ .
5. Find the volume of a spherical cap of height  $h$  cut off from a sphere of radius  $a$ .
6. Find the volume of the solid generated by the revolution of an arc of the catenary  $y = c \cosh(x/c)$  about the  $x$ -axis.
7. The area of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  lying between the vertex and the latus rectum is revolved about the  $x$ -axis. Find the volume generated.
8. A paraboloid of revolution is generated by rotating the parabola  $y^2 = ax$  about  $OX$ . Find the volume generated by that portion of the curve which lies between  $x = 0$  and  $x = h$ . If  $R$  is the

area of the cross-section at  $x = h$ , show that the volume is half that of a cylinder of base area  $R$  and length  $h$ .

9. Find the volume of the reel-shaped solid formed by the revolution about the  $y$ -axis of the part of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  cut off by the latus rectum.
10. Find the volume of the prolate spheroid generated by an ellipse whose major and minor axes are  $(24\pi)^{1/3}$  and  $(3\pi)^{1/3}$ .
11. Prove that the volume of the solid generated by the revolution of an ellipse round its minor axis, is a mean proportional between those generated by the revolution of the ellipse and of auxilliary circle round the major axis.
12. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving  

$$x = a \cos \theta, y = b \sin \theta$$
about the  $y$ -axis.

13. The part of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

cut off by a latus-rectum revolves about the tangent at the nearer vertex. Find the volume of the reel thus generated.

14. Find the volume generated by revolving the area bounded by the curve  $y = xe^x$ , ordinate  $x = 1$  and the  $x$ -axis about the  $x$ -axis.
15. Find the volume of the solid formed by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis, of the loops of the following curves :  
 (a)  $y^2 (a - x) = x^2 (a + x)$       (b)  $y^2 (a + x) = x^2 (3a - x)$   
 (c)  $y^2 (a + x) = x^2 (a - x)$       (d)  $y^2 = x^2 (a - x)$ .
16. Find the volume of the solid generated by the revolution of the curve  $y (a^2 + x^2) = a^3$  about its asymptote.
17. Find the volume of the solid generated by the revolution of the area between the curve  $xy^2 = 4a^2 (2a - x)$  and its asymptote about the asymptote.
18. The loop of the curve  $2ay^2 = x (x - a)^2$  revolves about  $x$ -axis, find the volume of the solid so generated.
19. Find the volume of the solid obtained by revolving the loop of the curve  $a^2 y^2 = x^2 (2a - x) (x - a)$  about  $y$ -axis.

20. Find the volume of the solid formed by the revolution of the cissoid  $y^2(2a - x) = x^3$  about its asymptote.
21. The ellipse  $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$  is divided with two points by the line  $x = a/2$ , and the smaller part is rotated through four right angles about this line. Prove that the volume generated is

$$\pi a^2 b \left[ \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{4} - \frac{\pi}{3} \right].$$

22. Find the volume of the solid obtained by rotating the area bounded by the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  around the line  $x = b$  ( $b > a$ ).
23. A quadrant of a circle, of radius  $a$ , revolves about its chord. Show that the volume of the spindle generated is

$$\frac{\pi}{6\sqrt{2}} (10 - 3\pi) a^3.$$

24. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolution of the tractrix

$$x = a \cos t + \frac{a}{2} \log \tan^2 \frac{t}{2}$$

$$y = a \sin t$$

about its asymptote.

25. Find the volume of the solid generated by the arc of the cissoid

$$x = 2a \sin^2 t, \quad y = \frac{2a \sin^3 t}{\cos t}$$

about its asymptote.

26. Prove that the volume of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis of the loop of the curve

$$x = t^2, \quad y = t - \frac{t^3}{3} \text{ is } \frac{3\pi}{4}.$$

27. Find the volume of the solid formed by revolving the cycloid

$$x = a(\theta + \sin \theta), \quad y = a(1 - \cos \theta)$$

(a) about the  $y$ -axis and

(b) about its base.

28. Find the volume of the solid formed by revolving the arc between the cycloid

$$x = a(\theta - \sin \theta), \quad y = a(1 - \cos \theta), \text{ and its base}$$

- (a) about the  $y$ -axis and  
 (b) about its base.
29. Find the volume of the solid generated by the revolution of the lemniscate  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$  about  
 (a) the initial line and  
 (b) the line  $\theta = \pi/2$ .
30. Show that the volume generated by the revolution of the limaçon

$$r = a + b \cos \theta \quad (a > b)$$

about the initial line is

$$\frac{4}{3} \pi a (a^2 + b^2).$$

### ANSWERS

#### EXERCISE 15.1

1.  $\frac{\pi}{-2} [e^{-2b} - e^2]$ , yes,  $\frac{\pi}{2e^2}$
2.  $\pi(\pi - 2)$
3.  $\frac{2\pi}{15}$
4.  $\frac{4}{3} \pi a^3$
5.  $\pi h^2 \left( a - \frac{h}{3} \right)$
6.  $\frac{c}{2} \left[ \sinh \frac{2b}{c} - \sinh \frac{2a}{c} \right]$
7.  $2\pi a^3$
8.  $2\pi a h^2$
9.  $\frac{4}{5} \pi a^3$
10.  $\pi^2$
12.  $\frac{4}{3} \pi a^2 b$
13.  $\frac{2\pi b}{3a} \left[ 6a^2 b - b^3 - 3ab\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} - 3a^3 \sin^{-1} \frac{b}{a} \right]$
14.  $\frac{\pi}{4} (e^2 - 1)$
15. (a)  $2\pi a^3 \left( \log 2 - \frac{2}{3} \right)$
- (b)  $\pi a^3 (8 \log 2 - 3)$
- (c)  $2\pi a^3 \left( \log 2 - \frac{2}{3} \right)$
- (d)  $\frac{\pi a^4}{12}$

16.  $\frac{1}{2} \pi^2 a^3$

17.  $4\pi^2 a^3$

18.  $\frac{\pi a^3}{27}$

19.  $\frac{23\pi a^3}{60}$

20.  $2\pi^2 a^3$

22.  $\frac{\pi}{3} [6ab^2 + 4a^3 - 3a^2 b\pi]$

24.  $\frac{2}{3} \pi a^3$

25.  $2\pi^2 a^3$

27. (a)  $\pi a^3 \left( \frac{3}{2} \pi^2 - \frac{8}{3} \right)$

(b)  $5\pi^2 a^3$

28. (a)  $6\pi^3 a^3$

(b)  $5\pi^2 a^3$

29. (a)  $\frac{\pi a^3}{12} \left[ \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} \log(1 + \sqrt{2}) - 1 \right]$

(b)  $\frac{\pi^2 a^3}{4\sqrt{2}}$

**15.8** To show that the curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution, about the  $x$ -axis, of the area bounded by the curve  $y = f(x)$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  is

$$\int_a^b 2\pi y \, ds$$

where  $s$  is the length of the arc of the curve measured from a fixed point on it to any point  $(x, y)$ .

Let  $AB$  be the curve  $y = f(x)$  and  $A, B$  the points corresponding to  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  respectively. Draw  $AC, BD \perp$  to  $x$ -axis.

Let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the curve and let the arc  $AP$  be  $s$ . Draw  $PM \perp OX$ .

If  $S$  denotes the curve surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the area  $ACMP$  about the  $x$ -axis, then clearly  $S$  is a function of  $s$ .

Let  $Q(x + \delta x, y + \delta y)$  be a point on the curve in the neighbourhood of  $P$ . Draw  $QN \perp OX$ , and let the arc  $AQ$  be  $s + \delta s$ , so that arc  $PQ = \delta s$ .

The curved surface of the solid of revolution of the area  $PMNQ$  about the  $x$ -axis is  $\delta S$ . Draw  $PR$  and  $QS$  parallel to  $x$ -axis and each equal in length to the arc  $PQ = \delta s$ .

Now the lines  $PR$  and  $QS$  generate cylinder, when the arc  $PQ$  revolves about  $x$ -axis, whose base radii are  $PM$  and  $NQ$ . The area of the curved surface generated by the arc  $PQ$  lies between the areas of the curved surfaces of the cylinders whose base radii are  $PM$  and  $NQ$ .

i.e.  $\delta s$  lies between  $2\pi y \delta s$  and  $2\pi (y + \delta y) \delta s$ .

$\therefore \frac{\delta S}{\delta s}$  lies between  $2\pi y$  and  $2\pi (y + \delta y)$ . Proceeding to limit as  $Q \rightarrow P$ , i.e. as  $\delta x \rightarrow 0$ ,  
[  $\therefore \delta y \rightarrow 0, \delta s \rightarrow 0$  ]

$\frac{\delta S}{\delta s}$  lies between  $2\pi y$  and a quantity which approaches to  $2\pi y$ .

$$\therefore \frac{dS}{ds} = 2\pi y$$

$$\therefore \int_{x=a}^{x=b} 2\pi y ds = \int_{x=a}^{x=b} \frac{dS}{ds} ds$$

$$= [S]_{x=a}^{x=b}$$

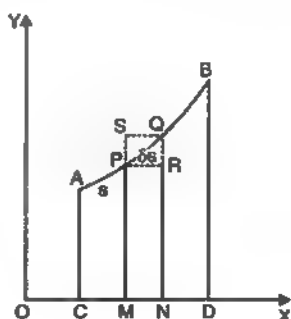
$$= (\text{volume of } S \text{ when } x = b)$$

$$- (\text{volume of } S \text{ when } x = a)$$

$$= \text{area of the surface generated by the revolution of the arc } ACDB - 0$$

$\therefore$  Surface area of the solid generated by the revolution of the area  $ACDB$

$$= \int_{x=a}^{x=b} 2\pi y ds.$$



### 15.9 Surface Formula for Cartesian Equations

The curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis, of the area bounded by the curve  $y = f(x)$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinates  $x = a$ ,  $x = b$  is

$$\int_{x=a}^{x=b} 2\pi y \frac{ds}{dx} dx$$

where 
$$\frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}$$

### 15.10 Surface Formula for Parametric Equations

The curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis of the area bounded by the curve  $x = f(t)$ ,  $y = \phi(t)$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinates at the points, where  $t = a$ ,  $t = b$  is

$$\int_{t=a}^{t=b} 2\pi y \frac{ds}{dt} dt$$

where 
$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2}$$

### 15.11 Surface Formula for Polar Equations

The curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the initial line, of the area bounded by the curve  $r = f(\theta)$  and the radii vectors  $\theta = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = \beta$  is

$$\int_{\theta=\alpha}^{\theta=\beta} 2\pi y \frac{ds}{d\theta} d\theta,$$

where 
$$\frac{ds}{d\theta} = \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}$$

and  $y = r \sin \theta$ .

### 15.12 Revolution about $y$ -axis

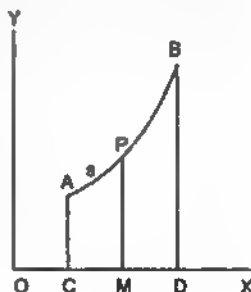
The curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $y$ -axis of the area bounded by the curve  $x = f(y)$ , the  $y$ -axis and the abscissae  $y = a$ ,  $y = b$  is

$$\int_{y=a}^{y=b} 2\pi x ds.$$

### 15.13 Revolution about Any Axis

The curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution, about an axis  $CD$ , of the area bounded by a curve  $AB$ , the axis  $CD$  and the perpendiculars  $AC$ ,  $BD$  on the axis is

$$\int 2\pi (PM) ds$$



**Solution :** The equation of the catenary is

$$y = a \cosh \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \sinh \left( \frac{x}{a} \right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left( \frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2} = \sqrt{1 + \sinh^2 \frac{x}{a}} = \cosh \frac{x}{a}$$

At the vertex,  $x = a$ .

$\therefore s$  = length of the arc from vertex to any point  $(x, y)$

$$= \int_0^x \frac{ds}{dx} dx$$

$$= \int_0^x \cosh \frac{x}{a} dx$$

$$= \left[ a \sinh \frac{x}{a} \right]_0^x$$

$$= a \left( \sinh \frac{x}{a} - 0 \right)$$

$$= a \sinh \frac{x}{a} \quad \dots (1)$$

$S$  = surface area generated by the arc

$$= \int_0^x 2\pi y \frac{ds}{dx} dx$$

$$= 2\pi \int_0^x a \cosh \frac{x}{a} \cdot \cosh \frac{x}{a} dx$$

$$= 2\pi a \int_0^x \cosh^2 \frac{x}{a} dx$$

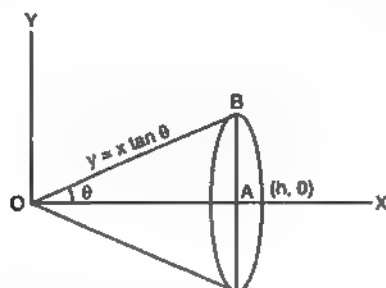
$$= \pi a \int_0^x \left[ 1 + \cosh \left( \frac{2x}{a} \right) \right] dx$$

$$= \pi a \left[ x + \frac{a}{2} \sinh \left( \frac{2x}{a} \right) \right]_0^x$$

$$= \pi a \left[ x + \frac{a}{2} \sinh \left( \frac{2x}{a} \right) \right] \quad \dots (2)$$



**Solution :** Let the right angled triangle  $AOB$  be formed by the line  $y = x \tan \theta$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinate  $x = h$ . Then



$OA = h$  is the height of the cone.

If  $r = AB$  is the radius of the base, then

$$\frac{r}{h} = \frac{AB}{OA} = \tan \theta \quad \dots (1)$$

and if  $l = OB$  is the slant side,

$$\text{then } \sec \theta = \frac{l}{h} \quad \dots (2)$$

$\therefore$  Required volume of the cone

$$\begin{aligned} &= \int_0^h \pi y^2 dx \\ &= \pi \int_0^h x^2 \tan^2 \theta dx \quad [\because y = x \tan \theta] \\ &= \pi \tan^2 \theta \left( \frac{x^3}{3} \right)_0^h \\ &= \frac{\pi h^2 \tan^2 \theta}{3} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \pi h^3 \frac{r^2}{h^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h \quad \text{[using (1)]} \end{aligned}$$

Now since  $y = x \tan \theta$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \tan \theta$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \frac{ds}{dx} &= \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{1 + \tan^2 \theta} \\ &= \sec \theta\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Required surface area of the cone

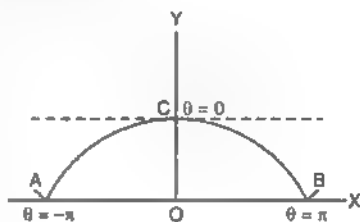
$$\begin{aligned}&= \int_0^h 2\pi y \frac{ds}{dx} dx \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^h x \tan \theta \cdot \sec \theta dx \\ &= 2\pi \tan \theta \sec \theta \left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right)_0^h \\ &= \pi h^2 \tan \theta \sec \theta \\ &= \pi h^2 \frac{r}{h} \cdot \frac{l}{h} \quad \text{[using (1) and (2)]} \\ &= \pi r l.\end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** The portion between two consecutive cusps of the cycloid  $x = a(\theta + \sin \theta)$ ,  $y = a(1 + \cos \theta)$  is revolved about the  $x$ -axis. Prove that the area of the surface so formed is to the area of the cycloid as  $64 : 9$ .

**Solution :** The equations of the cycloid are

$$\begin{aligned}x &= a(\theta + \sin \theta) \\ y &= a(1 + \cos \theta)\end{aligned}$$

The cycloid is symmetrical about the  $y$ -axis and for half of the cycloid,  $\theta$  varies from  $0$  to  $\pi$ . If  $\Delta$  denotes the area of the cycloid, then



$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &= 2 \int_0^\pi y \frac{dx}{d\theta} d\theta \\ &= 2 \int_0^\pi a(1 + \cos \theta) a(1 + \cos \theta) d\theta \\ &= 2a^2 \int_0^\pi \left(2 \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2 d\theta\end{aligned}$$

$$= 32\pi a^2 \int^{\pi/2} \cos^3 t \, dt$$

$$= 32\pi a^2 \cdot \frac{2}{3} = \frac{64\pi a^2}{3}$$

$\therefore$  Required ratio

$$= \frac{S}{\Delta}$$

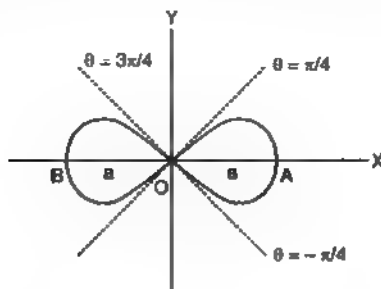
$$= \frac{\frac{64}{3} \pi a^2}{3\pi a^2}$$

$$= \frac{64}{9}$$

**Example 5.** Find the surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the lemniscate  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$  about the initial line.

**Solution :** The equation of the lemniscate is

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta \quad \dots (1)$$



The curve is symmetrical about the initial line and the line  $\theta = \pi/2$ .

For a loop putting  $r = 0$ , we get

$$\cos 2\theta = 0 = \cos\left(\pm \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$\Rightarrow 2\theta = \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta = \frac{\pi}{4} \quad [\text{two consecutive values}]$$

The curve consists of two equal loops and  $\theta = -\pi/4$ ,  $\theta = \pi/4$  are the tangents at the pole. In the first quadrant, for half of the loop,  $\theta$  varies from 0 to  $\pi/4$ .

From (1)

$$2r \frac{dr}{d\theta} = -2a^2 \sin 2\theta$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{dr}{d\theta} = -\frac{a^2 \sin 2\theta}{r}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{ds}{d\theta} &= \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{a^2 \cos 2\theta + \frac{a^4 \sin^2 2\theta}{r^2}} \\ &= \sqrt{a^2 \cos 2\theta + \frac{a^4 \sin^2 2\theta}{a^2 \cos 2\theta}} \\ &= \frac{a}{\sqrt{\cos 2\theta}} \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Required surface

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/4} 2\pi y \frac{ds}{d\theta} d\theta \\ &= 4\pi \int_0^{\pi/4} r \sin \theta \frac{a}{\sqrt{\cos 2\theta}} d\theta \\ &= 4\pi \int_0^{\pi/4} a \sqrt{\cos 2\theta} \sin \theta \frac{a}{\sqrt{\cos 2\theta}} d\theta \\ &= 4\pi a^2 \int_0^{\pi/4} \sin \theta d\theta \\ &= 4\pi a^2 (-\cos \theta)_0^{\pi/4} \\ &= 4\pi a^2 \left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + 1\right) \\ &= 4\pi a^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 6.** The part of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  cut-off by the latus rectum revolves about the segment at the vertex. Find the curved surface of the real thus generated.

**Solution :** The equation of the parabola is

$$y^2 = 4ax \quad \dots (1)$$

The required curved surface is generated by the revolution of the arc  $LAL'$ , cut-off by the latus rectum, about the tangent at the vertex, i.e.,  $y$ -axis.

For half of the arc  $AL$ ,  $x$  varies from 0 to  $a$ .

From (1),

$$y = 2\sqrt{a}\sqrt{x}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{x}}$$

$$\therefore \frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{1 + \frac{a}{x}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{x+a}{x}}$$

$\therefore$  Required surface

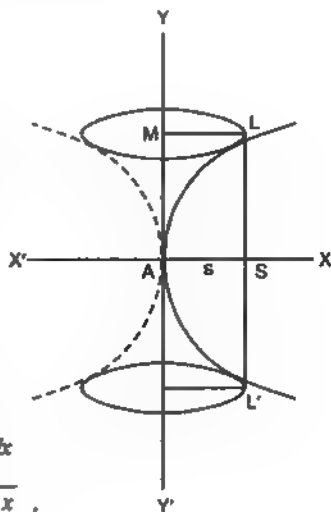
$$= 2 \int_0^a 2\pi x \frac{ds}{dx} dx$$

$$= 4\pi \int_0^a x \sqrt{\frac{a+x}{x}} dx$$

$$= 4\pi \int_0^a \sqrt{x^2 + ax} dx$$

$$= 4\pi \int_0^a \sqrt{\left(x + \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^2} dx$$

$$= 4\pi \left[ \frac{1}{2} \left(x + \frac{a}{2}\right) \sqrt{\left(x + \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^2} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{a^2}{4} \cdot \cosh^{-1} \left( \frac{x + a/2}{a/2} \right) \right]_0^a$$



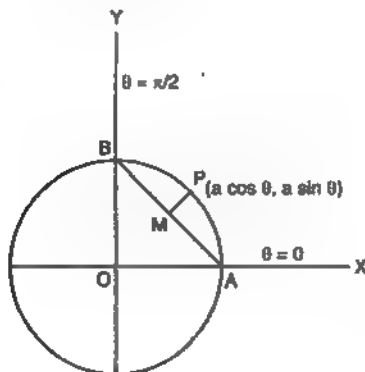
$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 4\pi \left[ \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{3a}{2} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{9a^2}{4} - \frac{a^2}{4}} - \frac{a^2}{8} (\cosh^{-1} 3 - \cosh^{-1} 1) \right] \\
 &= 4\pi \left[ \frac{3a}{4} \sqrt{2} a - \frac{a^2}{8} \left\{ \log (3 + \sqrt{9-1}) - \log (1 + \sqrt{1-1}) \right\} \right] \\
 &\quad \left[ \because \cosh^{-1} x = \log \{x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1}\} \right] \\
 &= 3\sqrt{2} \pi a^2 - \frac{\pi a^2}{2} \log (3 + 2\sqrt{2}) \\
 &= \pi a^2 \left[ 3\sqrt{2} - \frac{1}{2} \log (\sqrt{2} + 1)^2 \right] \\
 &= \pi a^2 [3\sqrt{2} - \log (\sqrt{2} + 1)]
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 7.** A quadrant of a circle of radius  $a$  revolves about its chord. Show that the surface of the spindle generated is

$$2\pi a^2 \sqrt{2} \left( 1 - \frac{\pi}{4} \right).$$

**Solution :** The parametric equations of the circle are

$$x = a \cos \theta, y = a \sin \theta$$



3. The arc  $AL$  of a parabola, where  $A$  and  $L$  are respectively the vertex and an extremity of the latus rectum, is revolved about its axis. Find the area of the surface generated.
4. (a) Find the area of the surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis of the area bounded by the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , the  $x$ -axis and the ordinate  $x = h$ .  
 (b) Find the curved surface of the solid generated by the revolution about the  $x$ -axis of the area bounded by the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , the ordinate  $x = 3a$  and the  $x$ -axis.
5. Find the surface area of the solid formed by the revolution, about the axis of  $y$ , of the part of the curve  $ay^2 = x^3$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = 4a$  which is above the  $x$ -axis.
6. Find the surface generated by the revolution of the arc of the catenary  $y = c \cosh x/c$  about the axis of  $x$ .
7. Find the surface generated by the revolution of the curve  $y = c \cosh (x/c)$  about the  $x$ -axis, between the planes  $x = a$  and  $x = b$ .
8. Find the surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the ellipse  $x^2 + y^2 = 16$   
 (a) about its minor axis  
 (b) about its major axis.
9. Prove that the surface of the prolate spheroid formed by the revolution of the ellipse of eccentricity  $e$  about its major axis is equal to

$$2 \times \text{Area of the ellipse} \times \left[ \sqrt{1 - e^2} + \frac{1}{e} \sin^{-1} e \right].$$

10. Find the surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the astroid  $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$  about the  $x$ -axis.
11. Prove that the surface area of the solid generated by the revolution of the loop of the curve

$$x = t^2, y = t - \frac{t^3}{3}$$

about the  $x$ -axis is  $3\pi$ .

12. Prove that the surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the tractrix

$$x = a \cos t + \frac{1}{2} a \log \tan^2 \frac{t}{2}, y = a \sin t$$

about its asymptote is equal to the surface of a sphere of radius  $a$ .

13. Find the surface generated by the revolution of the cycloid
  - (a)  $x = a (\theta - \sin \theta)$ ,  $y = a (1 - \cos \theta)$  about the  $x$ -axis.
  - (b)  $x = a (\theta + \sin \theta)$ ,  $y = a (1 - \cos \theta)$  about the tangent at the vertex.
  - (c)  $x = a (\theta + \sin \theta)$ ,  $y = a (1 + \cos \theta)$  about its base.
14. Find the area of the surface of revolution formed by revolving the curve  $r = 2a \cos \theta$  about the initial line.
15. The curve  $r = a (1 + \cos \theta)$  revolves about the initial line. Find the surface of the figure so formed.
16. Find the surface of the solid formed by the revolution of the cardioid  $r = a (1 - \cos \theta)$  about the initial line.
17. Find the surface of the solid generated by the revolution of the ellipse  $4x^2 + 5y^2 = 20$  about the minor axis.
18. Prove that the surface of the oblate spheroid formed by the revolution of the ellipse of semi-major axis  $a$  and eccentricity  $e$  is

$$2\pi a^2 \left[ 1 + \frac{1-e^2}{1+e^2} \log \left( \frac{1+e}{1-e} \right) \right].$$

19. The arc of the cardioid  $r = a (1 + \cos \theta)$  included between  $-\pi/2 \leq \theta \leq \pi/2$  is rotated about the line  $\theta = \pi/2$ . Find the area of surface generated.
20. A circular arc revolves about its chord. Find the area of the surface generated, when  $2\alpha$  is the angle subtended by the arc at the centre.

## ANSWERS

### EXERCISE 15.2

1.  $2\pi a^2$
3.  $\frac{8\pi a^2}{3} (2\sqrt{2} - 1)$



# 16

## Integration of Functions of Two and Three Variables

---

### 16.1 Double Integrals

Let  $f(x, y)$  be defined for all points in a finite region  $A$  of the  $xy$ -plane. Let  $\delta x \delta y$  be an elementary area of the region  $A$  surrounding the point  $(x, y)$ . Then

$$\lim_{\delta x \rightarrow 0, \delta y \rightarrow 0} \sum \sum f(x, y) \delta x \delta y$$

is written as  $\iint_A f(x, y) dx dy$  which is called the *double integral* of  $f(x, y)$  over the region  $A$ .

If the region  $A$  is bounded by the curves

$$x = x_1, x = x_2, y = y_1, y = y_2$$

$$\text{then} \quad \iint_A f(x, y) dx dy = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y) dx dy \quad \dots (1)$$

### 16.2 Evaluation of Double Integrals

(1) To evaluate (1) we proceed as follows :

(a) If  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2$  are constants, then the order of integration is immaterial, provided the limits of integration are changed accordingly.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus} \quad \iint_A f(x, y) dx dy \\ &= \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y) dx dy \\ &= \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} f(x, y) dy dx \end{aligned}$$

(b) If  $x_1, x_2$  are functions of  $y$ , let  $x_1 = \phi_1(y)$ ,  $x_2 = \phi_2(y)$  and let  $y_1, y_2$  be constants. Then

$$\iint_A f(x, y) dx dy = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y) dx dy$$

(c) If  $y_1, y_2$  are functions of  $x$ , let  $y_1 = \phi_1(x)$ ,  $y_2 = \phi_2(x)$  and let  $x_1, x_2$  be constants. Then

$$\iint_A f(x, y) dx dy = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} f(x, y) dy dx$$

From (a), (b), (c) above, we observe that integration is first to be performed with respect to that variable having variable limits and finally with respect to the variable with constant limits.

(II) If  $f(x, y) = 1$ , then the double integral  $\iint_A dx dy$  gives the area of the region  $A$ .

(III) To evaluate  $\int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y) dx dy = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \left[ \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y) dx \right] dy$  we integrate  $f(x, y)$  w.r.t.  $x$ , treating  $y$  as a constant, getting a function of  $y$  (or a constant), say  $F(y)$  and then  $F(y)$  is integrated w.r.t.  $y$ .

### 16.3 Triple Integrals

Let  $f(x, y, z)$  be defined for all points in a finite region  $V$  of space. Let  $\delta x \delta y \delta z$  be an elementary volume of the region  $V$  surrounding the point  $(x, y, z)$ . Then

$$\lim_{\substack{\delta x \rightarrow 0 \\ \delta y \rightarrow 0 \\ \delta z \rightarrow 0}} \sum \sum \sum f(x, y, z) \delta x \delta y \delta z$$

is written as  $\iiint_V f(x, y, z) dx dy dz$  which is called the *triple integral* of  $f(x, y, z)$  over the region  $V$ . If the region  $V$  is bounded by the surfaces  $x = x_1, x = x_2, y = y_1, y = y_2, z = z_1, z = z_2$  then

$$\iiint_V f(x, y, z) dx dy dz = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{z_1}^{z_2} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz \quad \dots (1)$$

### 16.4 Evaluation of Triple Integrals

(I) To evaluate (1), we proceed as follows:

(a) If  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2, z_1, z_2$  are all constants, then the order of integration is immaterial, provided the limits of integration are changed accordingly. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{z_1}^{z_2} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz \\
 &= \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \int_{z_1}^{z_2} f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz \\
 &= \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \int_{z_1}^{z_2} f(x, y, z) \, dz \, dy \, dx \text{ etc.}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) If  $z_1, z_2$  are functions of  $x$  and  $y$ ,  $y_1, y_2$  are functions of  $x$  while  $x_1, x_2$  are constants then integration is to be performed first with respect to  $z$ , then with respect to  $y$  and finally with respect to  $x$ . Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 \iiint_V f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz \\
 = \int_{x=a}^{x=b} \int_{y=y_1}^{y=y_2} \int_{z=\phi_1(x,y)}^{z=\phi_2(x,y)} f(x, y, z) \, dz \, dy \, dx
 \end{aligned}$$

(ii) If  $f(x, y, z) = 1$ , then the triple integral  $\iiint_V dx \, dy \, dz$  gives the volume of the region  $V$ .

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Choose the correct answer :

$$\int_0^1 \int_0^1 (x^2 + y^2) \, dx \, dy$$

- (i) 1                      (ii) 0                      (iii)  $\frac{1}{3}$                       (iv)  $\frac{2}{3}$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 \int_0^1 (x^2 + y^2) \, dx \, dy &= \int_0^1 \left[ \int_0^1 (x^2 + y^2) \, dx \right] dy \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x^3}{3} + y^2 x \right) \Big|_0^1 dy \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{1}{3} + y^2 \right) dy \\
 &= \left( \frac{y}{3} + \frac{y^3}{3} \right) \Big|_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} = \frac{2}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence the correct answer is (iv)  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\int_0^2 \int_1^3 xy(1+x+y) dx dy$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int_0^2 \int_1^3 xy(1+x+y) dx dy \\
 &= \int_0^2 \left[ \int_1^3 xy(1+x+y) dx \right] dy \\
 &= \int_0^2 \left[ \int_1^3 (xy + x^2y + xy^2) dx \right] dy \\
 &= \int_0^2 \left( \frac{x^2y}{2} + \frac{x^3y}{3} + \frac{x^2y^2}{2} \right) \Big|_1^3 dy \\
 &= \int_0^2 \left[ \left( \frac{9y}{2} + \frac{27y}{3} + \frac{9y^2}{2} \right) - \left( \frac{y}{2} + \frac{y}{3} + \frac{y^2}{2} \right) \right] dy \\
 &= \int_0^2 \left( 4y + \frac{26y}{3} + 4y^2 \right) dy \\
 &= \left( \frac{4y^2}{2} + \frac{26y^2}{3 \cdot 2} + \frac{4y^3}{3} \right) \Big|_0^2 \\
 &= \left( 2y^2 + \frac{13}{3}y^2 + \frac{4y^3}{3} \right) \Big|_0^2 \\
 &= \left( \frac{19y^2}{3} + \frac{4y^3}{3} \right) \Big|_0^2 \\
 &= \frac{76}{3} + \frac{32}{3} = \frac{108}{3} = 36
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \int_0^1 \frac{dx dy}{\sqrt{1-x^2} \sqrt{1-y^2}}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int_0^1 \int_0^1 \frac{dx dy}{\sqrt{1-x^2} \sqrt{1-y^2}} \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left[ \int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2} \sqrt{1-y^2}} \right] dy \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-y^2}} \sin^{-1} x \right) \Big|_0^1 dy
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^1 \frac{\pi}{2\sqrt{1-y^2}} dy \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} (\sin^{-1} y)_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right) = \frac{\pi^2}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Evaluate  $\int_1^2 \int_0^x \frac{dy dx}{x^2 + y^2}$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_1^2 \int_0^x \frac{dy dx}{x^2 + y^2} &= \int_1^2 \left( \int_0^x \frac{dy}{x^2 + y^2} \right) dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{x} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{y}{x} \right) \right\}_0^x dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \left[ \frac{1}{x} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x}{x} \right) - \frac{1}{x} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{0}{x} \right) \right] dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \left( \frac{1}{x} \tan^{-1} 1 - 0 \right) dx \\
 &= \int_1^2 \frac{\pi}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{x} dx \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} (\log x)_1^2 \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{4} \log 2
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \int_0^{x^2} e^{y/x} dy dx$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^1 \int_0^{x^2} e^{y/x} dy dx &= \int_0^1 \left[ \int_0^{x^2} e^{y/x} dy \right] dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{e^{y/x}}{1/x} \right)_0^{x^2} dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 (xe^{y/x})_0^{x^2} dx
 \end{aligned}$$

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_{-c}^c \int_{-b}^b \int_{-a}^a (x^2 + y^2 + z^2) dz dy dx \\
&= \int_{-c}^c \int_{-b}^b \left[ \int_{-a}^a (x^2 + y^2 + z^2) dz \right] dy dx \\
&= \int_{-c}^c \int_{-b}^b \left( x^2 z + y^2 z + \frac{z^3}{3} \right)_{-a}^a dy dx \\
&= \int_{-c}^c \int_{-b}^b \left\{ \left( x^2 a + y^2 a + \frac{a^3}{3} \right) \right. \\
&\quad \left. - \left( -x^2 a - y^2 a - \frac{a^3}{3} \right) \right\} dy dx \\
&= \int_{-c}^c \int_{-b}^b 2 \left( x^2 a + y^2 a + \frac{a^3}{3} \right) dy dx \\
&= 2 \int_{-c}^c \left[ \int_{-b}^b \left( x^2 a + y^2 a + \frac{a^3}{3} \right) dy \right] dx \\
&= 2 \int_{-c}^c \left( x^2 ay + \frac{y^2}{3} a + \frac{a^3}{3} y \right)_{-b}^b dx \\
&= 2 \int_{-c}^c \left\{ \left( x^2 ab + \frac{b^3}{3} a + \frac{a^3}{3} b \right) \right. \\
&\quad \left. - \left( -x^2 ab - \frac{b^3}{3} a - \frac{a^3 b}{3} \right) \right\} dx \\
&= 2 \int_{-c}^c \left( 2x^2 ab + \frac{2b^3 a}{3} + \frac{2a^3 b}{3} \right) dx \\
&= 2 \cdot (2ab) \int_{-c}^c \left( x^2 + \frac{b^3}{3} + \frac{a^2}{3} \right) dx \\
&= 4ab \left( \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{b^3}{3} x + \frac{a^2}{3} x \right)_{-c}^c \\
&= 4ab \left[ \left( \frac{c^3}{3} + \frac{b^3 c}{3} + \frac{a^2 c}{3} \right) - \left( -\frac{c^3}{3} - \frac{b^3 c}{3} - \frac{a^2 c}{3} \right) \right] \\
&= 4ab \left[ \frac{2c^3}{3} + \frac{2b^3 c}{3} + \frac{2a^2 c}{3} \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{8abc}{3} [c^2 + b^2 + a^2]$$

**Example 8.** Evaluate  $\int_0^1 \int_y^1 \int_0^{1-x} x \, dz \, dx \, dy$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 \int_y^1 \int_0^{1-x} x \, dz \, dx \, dy &= \int_0^1 \int_y^1 \left[ \int_0^{1-x} x \, dz \right] dx \, dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_y^1 (xz)_0^{1-x} dx \, dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \left\{ \int_y^1 x(1-x) dx \right\} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} \right)_y^1 dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} \right) - \left( \frac{1}{2} y^2 - \frac{1}{3} y^3 \right) \right\} dy \\ &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{2} y^2 + \frac{1}{3} y^3 \right) dy \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{6} y - \frac{y^3}{10} + \frac{y^4}{21} \right)_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{21} = \frac{4}{35} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 9.** Evaluate  $\int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \int_0^{a \sin \theta} dr \int_0^{a^2-r^2/a} r \, dz$ .

**Solution :**

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \int_0^{a \sin \theta} dr \int_0^{a^2-r^2/a} r \, dz \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \int_0^{a \sin \theta} dr (rz)_0^{a^2-r^2/a} \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{a \sin \theta} \frac{r(a^2 - r^2)}{a} dr \\ &= \frac{1}{a} \int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \int_0^{a \sin \theta} (ra^2 - r^3) dr \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{a} \int_0^{\pi/2} d\theta \left( \frac{r^2 a^2}{2} - \frac{r^4}{4} \right)_0^{a \sin \theta} \\
&= \frac{1}{a} \int_0^{\pi/2} \left( \frac{a^4 \sin^2 \theta}{2} - \frac{a^4 \sin^4 \theta}{4} \right) d\theta \\
&= \frac{a^3}{4} \int_0^{\pi/2} (2 \sin^2 \theta - \sin^4 \theta) d\theta \\
&= \frac{a^3}{4} \left[ 2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{3}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{2} \right] \\
&= \frac{5a^3 \pi}{64}
\end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 16.1**

Evaluate the following :

1.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^2 (x+y) dx dy$
2.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^1 (x^2 + 3y^2) dx dy$
3.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^2 xy(1+x+y) dx dy$
4.  $\int_0^2 \int_0^4 (x^2 + y^2) dy dx$
5.  $\int_0^2 \int_0^4 \frac{dx dy}{xy}$
6.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^2 (x+2) dx dy$
7.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \int_{\pi/2}^{\pi} \cos(x+y) dy dx$
8.  $\int_1^2 \int_1^4 (xy + e^y) dy dx$
9.  $\int_1^4 \int_1^2 (xy + e^y) dx dy$
10.  $\int_{-1}^2 \int_x^{x^2} dy dx$
11.  $\int_0^1 \int_y^2 (x^2 + 3y + 2) dy dx$
12.  $\int_0^1 \int_y^{y^2+1} x^2 y dx dy$
13.  $\int_0^1 \int_x^{\sqrt{x}} (x^2 + y^2) dy dx$
14.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{a \sin \theta} r dr d\theta$
15.  $\int_0^2 \int_0^{\sqrt{2x-x^2}} x dy dx$
16.  $\int_1^2 \int_0^{1/y} y dy dx$
17.  $\int_0^a \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} \sqrt{a^2-x^2-y^2} dy dx$
18.  $\int_0^a \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} (a^2-x^2-y^2) dy dx$



19.  $\int_0^1 \int_y^{\sqrt{y}} (x^2 + y^2) dy dx$
20.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^{\sqrt{1-y^2}} y dy dx$
21.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^2 \int_1^2 x^2 yz dz dy dx$
22.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^1 \int_0^1 e^{x+y+z} dx dy dz$
23.  $\int_0^2 \int_0^2 \int_0^2 (yz + zx + xy) dx dy dz$
24.  $\int_{-1}^1 \int_0^2 \int_{x-z}^{x+z} (x + y + z) dy dx dz$
25.  $\int_0^2 dx \int_0^2 dy \int_0^{2-x} xyz dz$
26.  $\int_1^3 \int_{1/2}^1 \int_0^{\sqrt{xy}} xyz dz dy dx$
27.  $\int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \int_0^{1-x-y} xyz dz dy dx$
28.  $\int_1^e \int_0^{\log y} \int_1^y \log z dz dx dy$
29.  $\int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{\pi/2} \int_0^{\tan z} x^2 \sin y dz dy dx$
30.  $\int_0^{\log 2} \int_0^x \int_0^{x+\log y} e^{x+y+z} dx dy dz$

# ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 16.1

1. 3
2. 12
3.  $30 \frac{3}{4}$
4.  $\frac{ab}{3} (a^2 + b^2)$
5.  $\log a \cdot \log b$
6. 5
7. -2
8.  $\frac{21}{4} + e^4 - e^3$
9.  $\frac{21}{4} + e^4 + e^3$
10.  $\frac{9}{2}$
11.  $\frac{7}{12}$
12.  $\frac{67}{120}$
13.  $\frac{11}{35}$
14.  $2\pi$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \iint_D x^2 y^3 dx dy &= \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{3} \sin^2 \theta \cos^3 \theta \cos \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^2 \theta \cos^4 \theta d\theta \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{96}.
 \end{aligned}$$

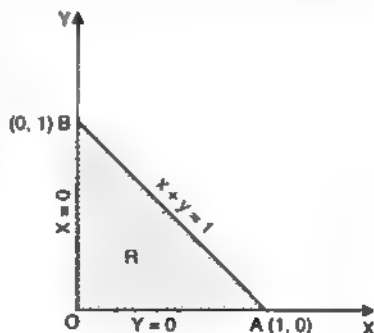
**Example 2.** Evaluate  $\iint_R e^{2x+3y} dx dy$  over the triangle bounded by  $x = 0$ ,  $y = 0$  and  $x + y = 1$ .

**Solution :** The region  $R$  of integration is the shaded area shown in the figure.

Here  $x$  varies from 0 to 1 and  $y$  varies from  $x$ -axis upto the line  $x + y = 1$  i.e. from 0 to  $1 - x$ .

$\therefore$  The region  $R$  can be expressed as

$$0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1 - x$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \iint_R e^{2x+3y} dx dy &= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} e^{2x+3y} dy dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 \left( \frac{e^{2x+3y}}{3} \right)_0^{1-x} dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \int_0^1 (e^{3-2x} - e^{2x}) dx \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} e^{3-2x} - \frac{1}{2} e^{2x} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \left[ e^2 + \frac{1}{2} e^2 - e^3 - \frac{1}{2} \right] \\
 &= -\frac{1}{3} \left[ -e^2(e-1) + \frac{1}{2}(e-1)(e+1) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\frac{e-1}{3} \left[ -e^2 + \frac{e+1}{2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{e-1}{6} (2e^2 - e - 1) \\
 &= \frac{e-1}{6} (2e^2 - 2e + e - 1) \\
 &= \frac{e-1}{6} [2e(e-1) + 1(e-1)] \\
 &= \frac{(e-1)^2 (2e+1)}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3.** Evaluate  $\iint_R y \, dy \, dx$ , where  $R$  is the region bounded by the parabolas  $y^2 = 4x$  and  $y^2 = 4y$ .

**Solution :** Solving  $x^2 = 4y$  and  $y^2 = 4x$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left( \frac{x^2}{4} \right)^2 &= 4x \\
 \Rightarrow x(x^2 - 64) &= 0 \\
 \Rightarrow x &= 0, 4
 \end{aligned}$$

when  $x = 0$ ,  $y = 0$ ;

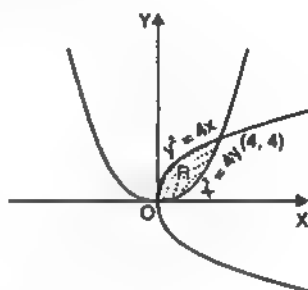
when  $x = 4$ ,  $y = 4$ .

$\therefore$  Coordinate of the point of intersection are  $(4, 4)$ .

The region  $R$  can be expressed as

$$0 \leq x \leq 4, \frac{x^2}{4} \leq y \leq 2\sqrt{x}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \iint_R y \, dx \, dy &= \int_0^4 \int_{x^2/4}^{2\sqrt{x}} y \, dy \, dx \\
 &= \int_0^4 \left( \frac{y^2}{2} \right)_{x^2/4}^{2\sqrt{x}} dx \\
 &= \int_0^4 \left( 2x - \frac{x^4}{32} \right) dx
 \end{aligned}$$



12. Evaluate  $\iint xy \, dx \, dy$  over the region in the positive quadrant for which  $x + y \leq 1$ .
13. Evaluate
- (a)  $\iint_A (x^2 + y^2) \, dx \, dy$       (b)  $\iint_A (2x + 3y) \, dx \, dy$
- where  $A$  is the region bounded by  $x = 0$ ,  $y = 0$ ,  $x + y = 1$ .
14. Prove that the area of the region bounded by the line  $x = \frac{1}{4}$  and the parabola  $y^2 = 4x$  is  $\frac{1}{3}$ .
15. Find the area between the parabolas  $y^2 = 4x$  and  $x^2 = 4y$ .
16. Evaluate  $\iint xy(x + y) \, dx \, dy$  over the area between  $y = x^2$  and  $y = x$ .
17. Compute the value of  $\iint_R y \, dx \, dy$  when  $R$  is the region in first quadrant bounded by the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ .
18. Evaluate  $\iiint xyz \, dx \, dy \, dz$  over the ellipsoid
- $$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{z^2}{c^2} = 1.$$
19. Find the volume of the sphere  $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = a^2$ .
20. Evaluate  $\iiint \frac{dx \, dy \, dz}{(x + y + z + 1)^3}$  over the region
- $$x \geq 0, y \geq 0, z \geq 0, x + y + z \leq 1$$
- (i.e. over the region bounded by the coordinate planes and the plane  $x + y + z = 1$ ).

## ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 16.2

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. $\pi ab$       | 2. $\frac{63}{4}$   |
| 3. $\frac{27}{4}$ | 4. $\frac{\pi}{24}$ |

5. 0

7.  $\pi a^3$

9.  $\frac{1}{6}$

12.  $\frac{1}{24}$

13. (a)  $\frac{1}{6}$

15.  $\frac{16}{3}$

17.  $\frac{ab^2}{3}$

19.  $\frac{4}{3}\pi a^3$

6.  $\pi a^2$

8.  $\frac{a^4}{8}$

11.  $\frac{1}{3}\left(\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

(b)  $\frac{1}{3}\left(e^3 - \frac{3}{2}e^2 + \frac{1}{2}\right)$

16.  $\frac{3}{56}$

18. 0

20.  $\frac{1}{2}\log 2 - \frac{5}{16}$

# 17

## Change of Order of Integration

**17.1** Sometimes it becomes difficult to evaluate double and triple integrals directly and in such cases, a change in the order of integration is found useful. In double integration if the limits of both the variables are constant, then we can always change the order of integration without any difficulty. But when the limits of  $y$  are functions of  $x$  and the limits of  $x$  are constant, then for direct evaluation of the double integral, we shall have to integrate first with respect to  $y$  (treating  $x$  as constant) and then with respect to  $x$ . However in case when the direct evaluation is difficult and a change in the order of integration seems to be desirable, then we shall have to find the new limits of  $x$  as function of  $y$ , and the limits of  $y$  as constants, by consideration of geometrical conditions.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Show that

$$\int_a^b \int_a^x f(x, y) dx dy = \int_a^b \int_y^b f(x, y) dy dx.$$

**Solution :**

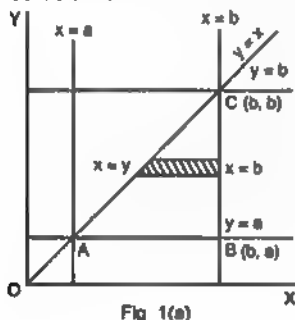


Fig 1(a)

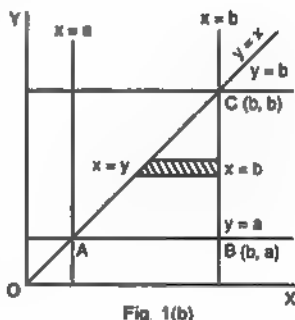


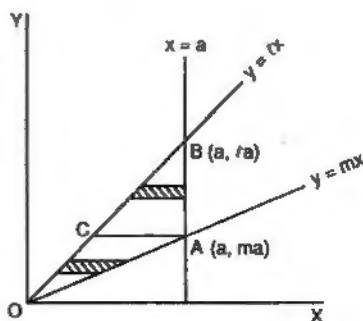
Fig 1(b)

In the double integral on the left hand side, we see that  $y$  varies from the line  $y = a$  to the line  $y = x$  and  $x$  varies from the line  $x = a$  to  $x = b$ . Thus the region of integration is the triangle  $ABC$  [Refer Fig. 1(a)]. If we reverse the order of integration, then we see that  $x$  varies from the line  $x = y$  to the line  $x = b$  and then  $y$  ranges from  $y = a$  to  $y = b$  [Refer Fig. 1(b)].

$$\text{Hence } \int_a^b \int_a^x f(x, y) dx dy = \int_a^b \int_y^b f(x, y) dy dx.$$

**Example 2.** Change the order of integration of  $\int_0^a \int_{mx}^{tx} V dx dy$ .

**Solution :** If we see the given double integral, we find that the whole region of integration is bounded by the lines  $y = mx$ ,  $y = tx$ ,  $x = 0$  and  $x = a$ . Let us draw a line through  $A$  parallel to  $OX$ , dividing the region of integration  $OAB$  into two parts  $OAC$  and  $ACB$ . Let us consider the strips drawn parallel to the axis of  $x$  in each region. We see that



**In the region  $OAC$ ,**

the integral after changing the order of integration becomes

$$\int_0^a \int_{y/m}^{y/t} V dy dx$$

**and In the region  $ACB$ ,**

the integral after changing the order of integration becomes

$$\int_{ma}^{ta} \int_{y/t}^a V dy dx$$

$$\text{Hence } \int_0^a \int_{mx}^{tx} V dx dy = \int_0^a \int_{y/m}^{y/t} V dy dx + \int_{ma}^{ta} \int_{y/t}^a V dy dx.$$

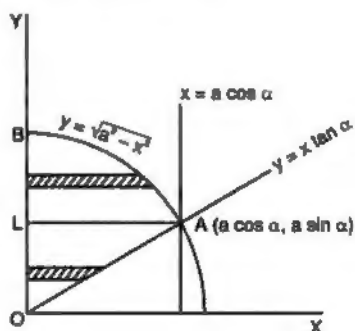
**Example 3.** Change the order of integration in the double integral

$$\int_0^{\cos \alpha} \int_{x \tan \alpha}^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} f(x, y) dx dy.$$

**Solution :** The limits of integration in the given double integral show that the region of integration is bounded by the following curves

$$y = x \tan \alpha, y = \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}, x = 0, x = a \cos \alpha.$$

$y = x \tan \alpha$  is a line passing through the origin which is the centre of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ , and is inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  to  $x$ -axis. These two intersect at  $A (a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha)$ . Hence the region of integration is  $OAB$  as shown in the figure.



Through  $A$  draw a line parallel to  $x$ -axis, thus, dividing the region of integration into two parts say  $OAL$  and  $LAB$ .

#### In the region $OAL$

The strip parallel to  $x$ -axis has its extremities on  $x = 0$  and  $y = x \tan \alpha$ . Hence limits of  $x$  are from  $x = 0$  to  $x = y \cot \alpha$ . Since  $A$  is

$$(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha),$$

the limits of  $y$  are from  $0$  to  $a \sin \alpha$ .

#### In the region $LAB$

The strip parallel to  $x$ -axis has its extremities on  $x = 0$  and the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ . Hence the limits of  $x$  are from  $0$  to  $\sqrt{a^2 - y^2}$ . The limits of  $y$  are clearly from  $a \sin \alpha$  to  $a$ .

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^{a \cos \alpha} \int_{x \tan \alpha}^{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} f(x, y) \, dy \, dx \\ = \int_0^{a \cos \alpha} \int_0^{y \cot \alpha} f(x, y) \, dy \, dx + \int_{a \sin \alpha}^a \int_0^{\sqrt{a^2 - y^2}} f(x, y) \, dy \, dx \end{aligned}$$

**Example 4.** Change the order of integration in

$$\int_0^{2a} \int_{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}^{\sqrt{2ax}} V \, dx \, dy.$$



**Solution :** The limits of integration in the given double integral show that the region of integration is bounded by

$$y = \sqrt{2ax - x^2}$$

$$\text{i.e., } x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$$

$$\text{i.e., } (x - a)^2 + y^2 = a^2 \text{ i.e.,}$$

a circle whose centre is  $(a, 0)$

and radius  $a$ ,  $y = \sqrt{2ax}$  i.e.,

$y^2 = 2ax$  which is parabola,

$x = 0$  and  $x = 2a$ . The parabola

and circle touch each other at  $O$

$(0, 0)$ , the common tangent there

at being  $x = 0$ . The line  $x = 2a$

meets the parabola  $y^2 = 2ax$  at

$y = 2a$  i.e., at the point  $B(2a,$

$2a)$ . Thus the region of

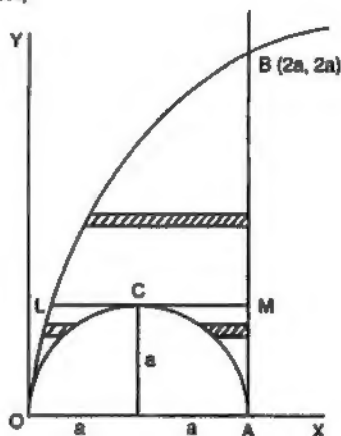
integration is given by  $OBACO$ .

Through  $C$ , draw a line parallel

to  $x$ -axis. Thus the region of

integration is divided into three

parts.



### In the region $OLC$

The extremities of the strip parallel to  $x$ -axis lie on  $y^2 = 2ax$  and

$x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$ , so that the limits of integration of  $x$  are  $y^2/2a$  to

$a - \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}$  because

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 - 2ax + y^2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \frac{2a \pm \sqrt{4a^2 - 4y^2}}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = a \pm \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}$$

and we have to choose  $-ve$  sign because  $x \leq a$  for the region. Also the constant limits of  $y$  are from  $0$  to  $a$ .

Hence the integral in this region after the change of order of integration becomes

## Also of Interest

- **Trigonometry**, Hari Kishan
- **Sure Success in Convergence**, Hari Kishan
- **Practical Statistics**, 2 Vols., Daryab Singh
- **Principles of Statistics**, 2 Vols., Daryab Singh
- **Fundamentals of Testing Statistical Hypotheses**, A. Santhakumaran
- **सांख्यिकी के सिद्धान्त**, 2 खण्ड, दय्याब सिंह

## Atlantic Indian Reprints

- **Mathematics for Economics and Business: An Interactive Introduction**, Includes MathEcon CD-ROM, 2nd ed., Jean Soper, Blackwell
- **Basic Mathematics for Economists**, 2nd ed., Mike Rosser, Routledge

## Titles Exclusively Distributed by Atlantic

- **Advanced Mathematical Economics**, Rakesh V. Vohra, Routledge
- **A Handbook for Doctoral Supervisors**, Stan Taylor & Nigel Beasley, Routledge
- **Getting A PhD: An Action Plan to Help You Manage Your Research, Your Supervisor and Your Project**, John Finn, Routledge
- **Learning to Teach Mathematics in the Secondary School**, 2nd ed., Ed. by Sue Johnston-Wilder & Peter Johnston-Wilder, Routledge
- **Introduction to Mathematical Techniques Used in GIS**, Peter Dale, CRC Press
- **Learning Mathematics Issues, Theory and Classroom Practice**, 3rd ed., Anthony Dorton, Continuum



**ATLANTIC**  
PUBLISHERS & DISTRIBUTORS

Visit our website at <http://www.atlanticbooks.com>

ISBN 81-269-0559-X



9 788126 905591

Rs. 595.00